CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الثانى

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

طبعة جديدة

طبقًا لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٥

GPS

تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

3rd Primary 2025

SECOND TERM

Specifications for Third Year Primary Examination for Governmental, Distinguished and Private Language Schools

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإبتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : One hour and a half **2024 / 2025** **30 Marks**

A Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds : (6 Marks)

Learners are given **FOUR (4)** words with **FOUR (4)** missing sounds. They are asked to write the sounds they listened to in each space. The sounds should be related to the phonics they studied. *(One and a half marks each)*

B Reading (13 Marks)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box : (2 Marks)

A text of about **(25 - 35)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **Five (5)** words related to the vocabulary learners studied are given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE** words given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (9 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **THIRTY (30)** to **FORTY (40)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **PRIMARY THREE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2) MCQ** questions with **THREE (3)** options each: *(Half a mark each)*

B. **FOUR (4) open-ended** questions: *(Two marks each)*

4 The Reader (2 Marks)

A. Read and match : *(1 Mark)*

TWO (2) sentences are provided into two columns; learners are asked to match each part in column A with the correct part in column B. The sentences should test Learners' knowledge of, events, characters and setting of the Reader.

(Half a mark each)

B. Read and write (YES) or (NO) : *(1 Mark)*

Learners are given **TWO (2)** sentences based on the reader. They are asked to answer YES OR NO. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of events, characters and setting of the Reader.

(Half a mark each)

OR

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False) : *(1 Mark)*

TWO (2) sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write **(T) True or (F) False** in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of events, characters and setting of the Reader. *(Half a mark each)*

B Writing (11 Marks)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c : *(2 Marks)*

FOUR (4) MCQs, based on structure are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **THREE (3)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

6 Read, order, and write : *(2 Marks)*

Learners are given **TWO (2)** sentences of not less than **SIX (6)** words each. The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence. *(One mark each)*

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements : *(7 Marks)*

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **TWENTY (20)** words (3 - 4 sentences) using **THREE (3)** guiding words given.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)

CONTENTS

Part 1

THEME 3 How the world works

THEME 4 Communication

Part 2

THEME 3

How the world works

UNIT 7

Where are the family?

أين العائلة ؟

• Unit Seven Objectives

▶ **Lesson 1**

Objectives

• Identify more vocabulary of family • يتعرف على مفردات أكثر عن العائلة

Vocabulary

• adult, baby, child, elderly person, nephew, niece

• بالغ ، طفل رضيع ، طفل ، شخص كبير بالسن ، ابن الأخ / الأخت ، ابنة الأخ / الأخت

▶ **Lessons 2&3**

Objectives

• Consolidate the present simple and continuous

• يعزز استخدام المضارع البسيط والمستمر

Vocabulary

• climb, learn, visit, ride a bike , wear glasses , curly hair , cook

• يتسلق ، يتعلم ، يزور ، يركب دراجة ، يرتدى نظارة ، شعر مجعد ، يطهو

Language

• My little sister is learning to read. • أختى الصغيرة تتعلم أن تقرأ.

• I've never climbed a mountain. • أنا لم أتسلق الجبل من قبل.

▶ **Lesson 4**

Objectives

• Recognize and produce the letter sound /u:/

• أن يتعرف على ويقول صوت الحرف/:u/

Vocabulary

• new , jewel , flew , used to , cube , flute , June , blue

• جديد ، جوهره ، طار ، اعتاد أن ، مكعب ، مزمار ، شهر يونيو ، لون ازرق

▶ **Lesson 5**

Objectives

• Read and talk about identical twins • أن يقرأ ويتحدث عن توأمان متطابقان

Vocabulary

• different , identical , non-identical , quadruplets

• مختلف ، متطابق ، غير متطابق ، أربعة توائم

▶ **Lessons 6 & 7**

Objectives

• Learn about baby rabbits • أن يتعلم عن صغار الأرانب

Vocabulary

• cell , habitat , pollen grains , seed , inherit , adapt

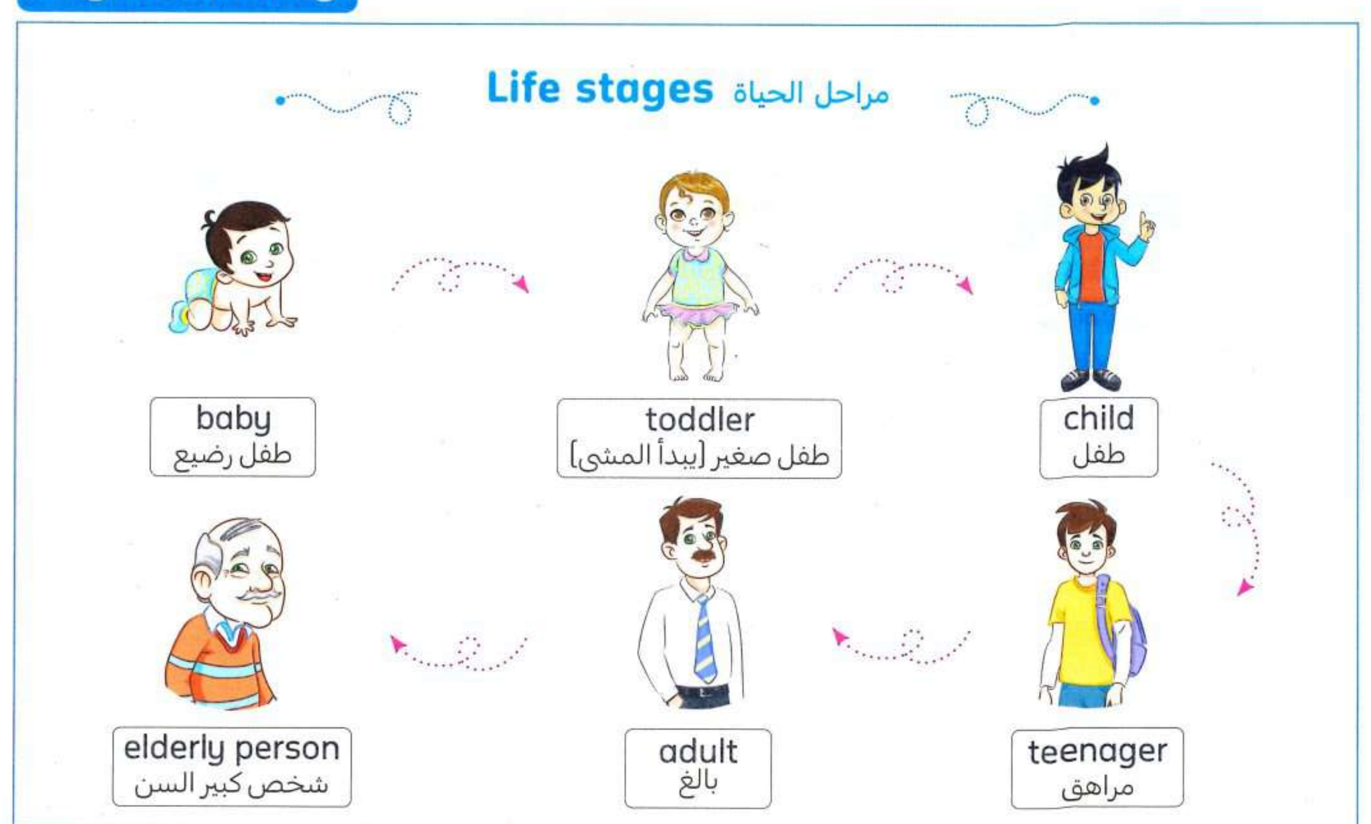
• خلية ، موطن ، حبوب اللقاح ، بذرة ، يرث ، يتأقلم

Lesson 1

• Where are the family ?

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



Extra vocabulary

nephew	ابن الأخ/الأخت	tower	برج
niece	ابنة الأخ / الأخت	grandchildren	أحفاد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
walk	يمشى	walked
jump	يقفز	jumped
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at

Irregular

Present		Past
build	يبنى	built
hold	يمسك/يحمل	held
bring	يحضر	brought

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• look after	يعتنى بـ	• I used to + [inf. مصدر الفعل] ...	اعتدت أن ...
• a lot of	كثيرًا من	• I think about ...	أفكر فى ...

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

• Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.

Look, read and learn. انظر ، اقرأ و تعلم.

The adult can walk, run, jump, and swim. He goes to work and looks after his family. يستطيع الشخص البالغ أن يمشى، يجرى، يقفز ويسبح. يذهب إلى عمله ويعتنى بأسرته.

The teenager goes to school and helps his parents. He is thinking about what he wants to do after school.
يذهب المراهق إلى المدرسة ويساعد والديه. يفكر المراهق فيما يريد أن يقوم به بعد المدرسة.

The toddler is learning a lot about the world, and he is learning to walk.
يتعلم الطفل الصغير عن العالم من حوله ويتعلم المشى.

The elderly person used to work, but now he doesn't. He likes being with his family. He looks after them and they look after him.
اعتاد الشخص الكبير فى السن على العمل ولكنه لم يعد يعمل. فهو يحب أن يكون مع أسرته ويعتنى بهم وهم يعتنوا به.

The child goes to school and plays with his friends. He's taller than he was last year.
يذهب الطفل إلى المدرسة ويلعب مع أصدقائه. يصبح الطفل أطول مما كان عليه العام الماضى.

The baby can't walk or talk, but she sleeps a lot and likes playing.
لا يستطيع الطفل الرضيع المشى أو الكلام ولكنه ينام كثيرًا ويحب اللعب.

III Language Functions

• Asking about life stages. السؤال عن مراحل الحياة.

What is good about being a toddler ? ما هو أفضل شـئ كونك طفلًا صغيرًا ؟

Being a toddler is fun because you are learning a lot and you play a lot of games.
كونك طفل صغير شيء ممتع لأنك تتعلم الكثير وتلعب الكثير من الألعاب.

General Exercises | on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

A. work – family – look – elderly – cake

My grandpa is an (1) .... person. He used to (2) .... , but now he doesn't work. He likes being with his (3) .... He looks after them and they (4) .... after him.

B. niece - learning - teenager - walk – tower

Today we're with our family. My cousin Ali is a (1) .... He is fourteen. My nephew Tarek is a baby . He can't talk or (2) .... I have a (3) .... called Lama. She is a toddler. She is (4) .... about the world. I love my family.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص التالى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hany is my friend. He is thirteen years old. He is a teenager. He has a big family. He has lots of cousins. They live in Aswan. He likes to see his family. He has a nephew, who is six and a niece who is one year old. She can't talk or walk. They are lovely. He visits his grandparents every week. He loves his family.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Hany is my ....
   a. nephew b. friend c. baby
2. Hany has a big ....
   a. school b. factory c. family

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How old is Hany ?

....

4. How often does Hany visit his grandparents ?

....

5. How old is Hany's nephew ?

....

6. Where do Hany's cousins live ?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. He .... building a tower.

a. is b. are c. do

2. She .... 13 years old.

a. have b. are c. is

3. I .... lots of cousins.

a. has b. have c. are

4. Where .... the family ?

a. are b. am c. can

B. 1. She is looking .... her children.

a. out b. after c. in

2. I used to .... my family every week.

a. meet b. meeting c. meets

3. She .... learning to walk.

a. are b. is c. were

4. He is .... his brother.

a. helping b. helps c. help

4 Read, order and write. اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. is – She – learning – walk – to.

....

2. a lot – Babies – to – sleep – like.

....

B. 1. love – my – I – seeing – family.

....

2. is – tower – a – building – Adam.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٢٠) كلمة (٣ - ٤) جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Life stages

Guiding elements :

- baby
- walk
- adult

....

....

....

....

Lessons
2 & 3

• Language use : Tense review
: Review of "used to"

I Vocabulary

wear glasses	يرتدي نظارة	skateboard	لوح التزلج / يتزلج
catch a ball	يمسك بالكرة	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	(be) able to	قادر على

II Language

1 The present simple and present continuous tense. زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر.

	Present simple	Present continuous
Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	Subject + → inf. مصدر الفعل / → inf. + (s/es/ies) • She **watches** TV every night. • They always **help** their parents.	Subject + (am/is/are) + inf. + ing • He **is playing** football. • They **are riding** their bikes.
Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية	Subject + → don't + inf. / → doesn't + inf. • We **don't go** to school on Fridays.	Subject + 'm not / isn't / aren't + inf. + ing • We **aren't doing** sports now.
Interrogative الجمل الاستفهامية	Wh- word + → do / → does + subj. + inf. ... ? • What **do** you like to eat ? **Does/Do + subject + inf. ... ?** • **Does** Amir play the guitar ? –Yes, he **does**. – No, he **doesn't**.	Wh- + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ? • What **are** you **doing** ? **Is/Are + subject + inf. + ing ... ?** • **Is** she **eating** ice cream ? – Yes, **she is**. – No, **she isn't**.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة على الزمن	always , usually , often , never , every (day) , sometimes	now , at the moment , Listen ! , Watch out !, Look !
Usage الاستخدام	Expressing facts or routines التعبير عن الحقائق أو الإجراءات الروتينية	Describing actions happening now وصف الأحداث التى تحدث الآن

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Toka is .... her car now.
   a. drive b. driving c. drove
2. Hany and Ali .... to school every day.
   a. go b. goes c. going
3. Look! The baby .... crying loudly.
   a. am b. is c. are
4. He always .... his bed in the morning.
   a. makes b. making c. make
5. My brothers are .... football in the park now.
   a. play b. played c. playing
6. We .... visiting the Pyramids every month.
   a. like b. liking c. to like
7. What .... you doing now ?
   a. is b. do c. are
8. They are .... basketball in the club.
   a. play b. played c. playing
9. Our teacher .... us with our homework.
   a. helps b. help c. helping
10. .... she studying math at the moment ?
    a. Are b. Is c. Does
11. Nader .... very well. He's a good singer.
    a. sing b. sings c. singing
12. What .... she do after school ?
    a. do b. doing c. does
13. Why .... you practicing hard ?
    a. do b. is c. are

2 Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. I .... [meets] my friends every Friday in the club.
2. They .... [is] watching TV at the moment.
3. We are .... [climb] the mountain now. It's too hard.
4. Where .... [is] she go every weekend ?
5. Today, I'm .... [ride] my bike to the park.
6. Manal .... [drinking] tea with milk for breakfast every day.

2 The past simple and present perfect tense. زمن الماضى البسيط والمضارع التام.

	Past simple	Present Perfect
Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	Subject + → التصريف الثانى للفعل / → inf. + (d/ed/ied) • I **played** tennis yesterday. • She **saw** the lion in the zoo.	Subject → have / → has + p.p. • I **have cleaned** my room. • She **has washed** her face.
Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية	Subject + didn't + inf. • He **didn't go** to school last week.	Subject → haven't / → hasn't + p.p. • I **haven't seen** the film. • He **hasn't climbed** the tree.
Interrogative الجمل الاستفهامية	Wh-word + did + subj. + inf. ... ? • What **did** you **do** yesterday ? - I **went** to the zoo. Did + subj. + inf. ... ? • **Did** you watch a film last night ? - **Yes**, I **did**. - **No**, I **didn't**.	Wh-word + → have / → has + subj. + p.p. ... ? • What **have** you **done** ? - I **have done** my homework. Have / Has + subj. + p.p. ... ? • **Has** he **played** well ? - **Yes**, he **has**. - **No**, he **hasn't**.
Keywords الكلمات الدالة على الزمن	• yesterday / last ... / ... ago / in the past	• for / since / already / just never / ever
Usage الاستخدام	Expressing finished actions التعبير عن أحداث منتهية	Describing unfinished actions وصف أحداث غير منتهية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Past Participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل
eat	ate	eaten
buy	bought	bought
sleep	slept	slept
visit	visited	visited
go	went	gone
give	gave	given
make	made	made
am/is/are	was/were	been
cook	cooked	cooked

Pop Quiz on Language

⭐ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have already .... my homework.
   a. finished   b. finishes   c. finishing
2. I've never .... a mountain before.
   a. climbs   b. climb   c. climbed
3. Yesterday .... rainy and windy.
   a. were   b. was   c. is
4. Last week, Mona .... some new colored pens.
   a. buys   b. bought   c. buy
5. Has she .... up the garden ?
   a. clean   b. cleaned   c. cleans
6. Last month, we .... our grandparents.
   a. visit   b. visits   c. visited
7. He .... to the club last night.
   a. goes   b. go   c. went
8. I've never .... to this park.
   a. go   b. went   c. gone
9. We .... to Aswan last winter.
   a. go   b. going   c. went
10. Have you .... to the Pyramids ?
    a. be   b. been   c. being
11. Yesterday, my dad .... me a new bike.
    a. buy   b. buys   c. bought
12. They .... never gone to the club.
    a. have   b. has   c. did
13. What .... you do last night ?
    a. have   b. did   c. do
14. .... she passed her exams ?
    a. Have   b. Did   c. Has
15. .... Mariam and Nour ever traveled to Luxor ?
    a. Do   b. Did   c. Have

3 used to اعتاد أن

Usage • Express past habits. * تعبر عن عادات ماضية ليست موجودة الآن.

Formation **Subj.** فاعل **+ used to + inf.**

used to

- Affirmative: Subj. + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل .
- Negative: Subj. + didn't use to + inf. مصدر الفعل .
- Question: Did + [subject] + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

I used to have long hair, but now it's short.
اعتدت أن يكون شعري طويل ،لكن الآن شعري قصير.

I didn't use to be able to cook, but now I can make cakes.

لم يكن لدى قدرة على الطهى ، لكن الآن أستطيع صنع الكيك.

4 can / could

- We use **can / can't + inf.** to express ability / inability in the present.

  - نستخدم "can / can't" للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في الوقت الحاضر.

– I **can ride** my bike.

– He **can't speak** English.

- We use **could / couldn't + inf.** to express ability / inability in the past.

  - نستخدم "could / couldn't" للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي.

– He **could run** when he was four.

– I **couldn't do** math when I was a toddler.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He .... ride his bike when he was five.
   a. could b. can c. was
2. Nada .... play football, but now she plays basketball.
   a. used b. use to c. used to
3. There was no TV in the past so he used to .... to the radio a lot.
   a. listen b. listened c. listening
4. I could .... very fast.
   a. swim b. swam c. swims
5. When I was a baby, I .... stand up and walk.
   a. couldn't b. can't c. can
6. I could .... a computer when I was ten.
   a. use b. used c. using
7. I didn't use to .... able to swim, but now I can.
   a. being b. be c. been
8. We .... use to sleep early.
   a. aren't b. didn't c. doesn't
9. She .... climb the mountain when she was younger.
   a. can b. could c. used
10. I used to .... milk every day when I was a child.
    a. drink b. drinks c. drinking

General Exercises | on Lessons 2&3

1 **A. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ النص وأكمل بكلمات من المربع.

bike – swim – toddler – doing – ball

Ali and Omar are my cousins. When Ali was a [1] .... , he couldn't catch a [2] .... When Omar was a baby, he couldn't ride a [3] .... Ali and Omar didn't use to be able to [4] ...., but now they can.

B. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ النص وأكمل بكلمات من المربع.

short - plays - makes - homework - ball

Dina is in primary 3. She always [1] .... her bed. She does her [2] .... every day after school. She has [3] .... hair. She [4] .... the guitar every day.

2 **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

اقرأ النص التالى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Youssef is a clever boy. He used to have short hair. He didn't use to ride a bike. He lives with his family in Cairo. Youssef used to be unhappy because he couldn't read well. He didn't use to wear glasses. His dad helped him. They went to the doctor. The doctor advised Youssef to wear glasses. Now, Youssef is happy. He wears glasses and he can read well.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Youssef used to have .... hair.
   a. long b. short c. curly
2. Youssef didn't use to be able to ride a ....
   a. train b. car c. bike

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Youssef live ?

....

4. Why did Youssef use to be unhappy ?

....

5. What does Youssef wear now ?

....

6. Where did Youssef and his dad go ?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. I haven't .... anything for two hours.

a. eat b. eaten c. ate

2. Last week, they .... many animals in the zoo.

a. see b. saw c. seen

3. They .... to London three years ago.

a. travel b. traveling c. traveled

4. They are .... to music now.

a. listened b. listening c. listen

B. 1. I didn't use to .... able to ride a bike, but now I can.

a. am b. be c. have

2. .... Hala visit her uncle on Fridays ?

a. Is b. Was c. Does

3. She hasn't .... her homework yet.

a. finishing b. finish c. finished

4. I .... to sleep early when I was six.

a. using b. used c. use

4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. to - bike - ride - used - He - a.

....

2. did - What - do - you - yesterday ?

....

B. 1. could - my - I - ride - bike.

....

2. have - room - my - I - cleaned.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٢٠) كلمة (٣ - ٤) جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

What you used to do

Guiding elements :

• bus • ride • swim

....

....

....

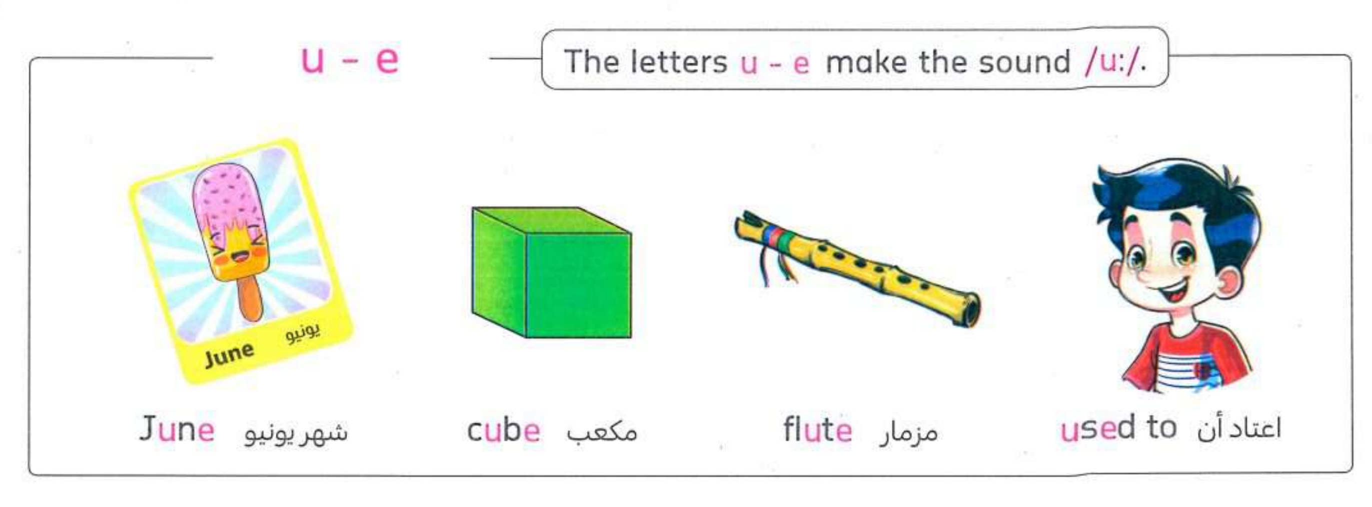
....

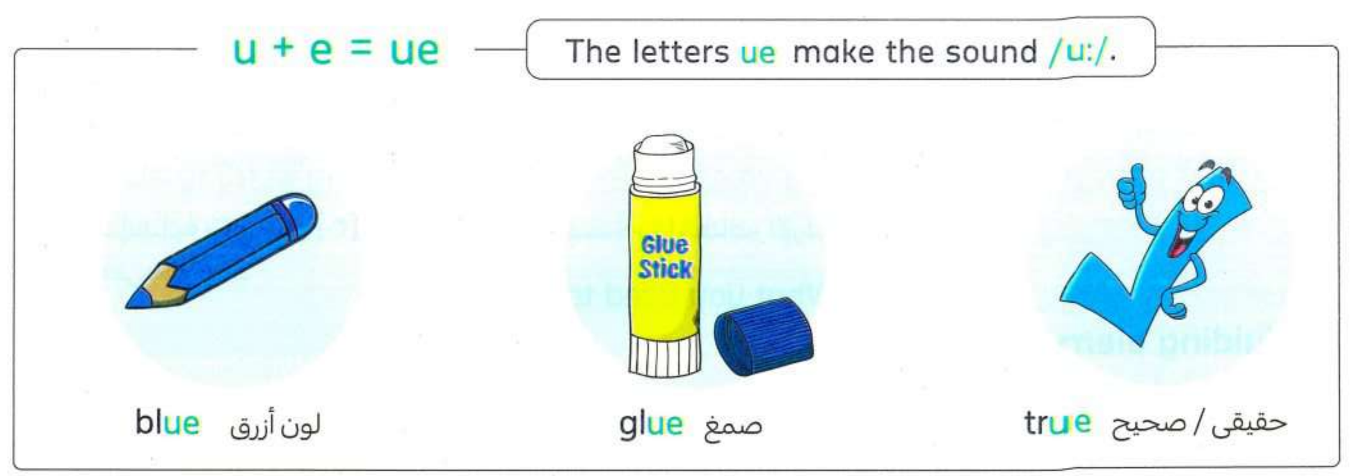
Lesson 4

• Learn sounds with Busy Bee!
• Learn to write with Busy Bee!

Phonics

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.





• Notes for parents

• Help your child to listen to the words that have /u:/ sound and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على الصوت /u:/ ويرددهم.

Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. j _ _ el | 2. gl _ _ | 3. bl _ _ | 4. n _ _

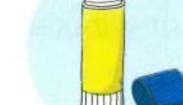
2 Look, read and complete with [ew] , [u-e] or [ue].

انظر، اقرأ وأكمل بـ [ew] ، [u - e] أو [ue].

1. She has a n _ _ cell phone.

2. My birthday is in J _ n _ .

3. We need gl _ _ for our project.



4. The shop had new, blue j _ _ els in June.

3 Look and write [ew] , [u-e] or [ue].

انظر، واكتب [ew] ، [u - e] أو [ue].

1. true ......ue......
2. flute ....
3. jewel ....
4. June ....
5. blue ....
6. cube ....
7. glue ....
8. new ....
9. used to ....

4 Read, sort and write.

اقرأ، صنف واكتب.

flew - blue - cube - flute - glue - jewel - June - new - true

ew	u - e	ue
....	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	....

Writing Skill

Punctuation Marks

1. We use a period[.] at the end of a sentence. ١. نستخدم النقطة فى نهاية الجملة.

   That was an amazing game.

---

2. We use an exclamation mark[!] at the end of a surprising sentence.
   ٢. نستخدم علامة التعجب فى نهاية الجملة التى تثير الدهشة.

   Stop ! That road is dangerous!

---

3. We use a question mark[?] at the end of a question.
   ٣. نستخدم علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

   What do you usually do at weekends ?

---

4. We use a comma [,] in a list and to connect two sentences.
   ٤. نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية فى القائمة ولربط جملتين.

   I like reading books , watching TV, and playing with my brothers.

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Read and write the correct punctuation marks. اقرأ واكتب علامات الترقيم الصحيحة.

1. Can you play the flute _
2. No _ Don't do that _
3. Fatma didn't use to speak English _
4. What do you usually do at weekends _
5. Yes _ I can swim _
6. That was an amazing game _
7. I used to have long hair _ but now my hair is short _

General Exercises | on Lesson 4

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. c _ b _ | 2. fl _ _ | 3. tr _ _ | 4. fl _ t _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ النص وأكمل بكلمات من المربع.

flute - flew - June - blue - new

Soha and Noha are friends. Noha's birthday is in (1) .... Soha buys a (2) .... bag for Noha. The color of the bag is (3) .... Noha wants to play the (4) .... on her birthday because she likes music.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Amir. I love my school. I have a new pen. My dad bought it for me. I used to play the flute in my music lesson. My first day at school was amazing. I met a lot of my friends and we played together in the playground. I made a lot of friends. On weekends, we used to go to the park and play football together. I used to go to the club three times a week. I practice tennis.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Amir has a new ....
   a. shirt b. pen c. jacket

2. Amir used to play the .... in music lesson.
   a. piano b. drum c. flute

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who bought a pen for Amir ?

....

4. How was Amir's first day at school ?

....

5. Where did Amir and his friends use to go on weekends ?

....

6. How often did Amir use to go to the club ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. I used to .... milk when I was a child.
a. drinking b. drinks c. drink

2. I have never .... Luxor.
a. visit b. visited c. visiting

3. I'm .... a picture at the moment.
a. painted b. paint c. painting

4. He .... football yesterday.
a. play b. played c. plays

B. 1. What .... you usually do on weekends ?
a. does b. is c. do

2. Did dad .... to walk to his work ?
a. use b. used c. using

3. I .... reading books and watching TV.
a. doesn't like b. like c. likes

4. I used to .... long hair.
a. have b. has c. had

5 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. have - pen - I - a new.

....

2. has - car - Dad - a blue.

....

B. 1. used - play - the flute - I - to.

....

2. road - dangerous - That - is.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (٢٠) كلمة (٣ - ٤) جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your family

Guiding elements :

• park • look after • new

....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 5

• CLIL :
Science : Identical twins

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

sibling	شقيق / شقيقة	triplets	ثلاثة توائم
twins	توأمان	quadruplets	أربعة توائم

Extra vocabulary

identical	متماثل	similar	متشابه
exactly	بالضبط	non-identical	غير متماثل
different	مختلف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
behave	يتصرف	behaved
work	يعمل	worked

Irregular

Present		Past
think	يفكر	thought
mean	يعنى	meant

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• [be] born	وُلد	• look the same	يبدو متشابه
• at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	• look like	يشبه
• a twin brother	أخ توأم	• How tall .... ?	كم الطول ؟

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
sibling	a brother or sister أخ أو أخت
identical	the same in every way متشابه فى كل شئ
similar	having lots of things the same, but not everything لديهم الكثير من الأشياء المتشابهة ولكن ليس فى كل شئ
different	not the same غير متشابه
non-identical	can be similar to each other or different يمكن أن يكونوا متشابهين لبعضهم البعض أو مختلفين

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... are three siblings.
   a. Triplets b. Twins c. Quadruplets
2. The two boxes are .... They look the same.
   a. tired b. identical c. excited
3. Do you have any .... ? - I have three sisters.
   a. clothes b. animals c. siblings
4. Ali and Amr are .... They aren't the same.
   a. similar b. different c. identical

II Listening and Reading

Listen, read and learn. استمع ، اقرأ وتعلم.

Twins[1] are two **siblings**[2] who are born at the same time. They can be **identical**[3] or **non-identical**[4] . Identical means that they are exactly the same. They look the same, and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers.
Non-identical twins can be similar to each other, or they can be very different. They can be two brothers, two sisters, or a sister and a brother. Sometimes they look like each other, and sometimes, they don't.
Sometimes, people can be **triplets**[5] – three siblings, or even **quadruplets**[6] – that's four !
Twins often think and **behave**[7] in **similar ways**[8].
Do you know any twins ? What do you think it would be like to be a twin ?

[1] توأمان
[2] أشقاء
[3] متماثل
[4] غير متماثل
[5] ثلاثة توائم
[6] أربعة توائم
[7] يتصرف
[8] طرق متشابهة

التوائم هما شقيقان يولدان فى نفس الوقت. يمكن أن يكونوا متطابقين أو غير متطابقين. التطابق يعنى إنهم متشابهون تمامًا. أى يبدو متشابهين، وأجسادهم تعمل وتنمو بنفس الطريقة. التوائم المتطابقة دائمًا شقيقتين أو أخوان. يمكن أن يكون التوائم غير المتطابقين متشابهين، أو يمكن أن يكونوا مختلفين تمامًا. يمكن أن يكونوا شقيقين أو شقيقتين أو أخت وأخ. فى بعض الأحيان يشبهون بعضهم البعض، وأحيانًا لا يشبهون بعضهم البعض. فى بعض الأحيان يمكن أن يكون الناس ثلاثة توائم- ثلاثة أشقاء أو حتى أربع توائم - أى أربع ! غالبًا ما يفكر التوائم ويتصرفون بطرق مماثلة. هل تعرف أى توائم ؟ ماذا تعتقد كيف سيبدو الأمر لو كنت توأم ؟

Answer the following question :

Learn
1. What are twins ?
   - Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time.

Practice
2. What does identical mean ?
   ....

General Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. bl _ _ | 2. n _ _ | 3. J _ n _ | 4. gl _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ النص وأكمل بكلمات من المربع.

born - behave – brothers – look like - quadruplets

Non-identical twins can be similar to each other, or they can be very different. They can be two [1]........................., two sisters, or a sister and a brother. Sometimes they [2]......................... each other, and sometimes they don't. Twins often think and [3]......................... in similar ways. Sometimes people can be triplets-three siblings , or even [4]......................... - that's four !

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص التالى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. They can be identical or non-identical. Identical means that they are exactly the same. They look the same and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Twins often think and behave in similar ways. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers. Sometimes people can be triplets. Triplets are three siblings.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Twins are born at the .... time .
   a. hard b. same c. different

2. Twins can be identical or ....
   a. non-identical b. same c. disappointed

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does identical mean ?

....

4. What are twins ?

....

5. How do twins behave ?

....

6. What are the triplets ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. Does Hana .... the flute ?
a. playing b. plays c. play

2. What are you .... ?
a. doing b. does c. do

3. I can .... my bike.
a. ride b. rides c. riding

4. They usually .... to the park.
a. goes b. go c. going

B. 1. .... Malak wear glasses ?
a. Do b. Does c. Doing

2. .... tall is Malak ? - 148 cm.
a. Where b. Why c. How

3. Jana .... a twin brother.
a. has b. have c. having

4. Twins .... two siblings.
a. is b. are c. was

5 Read, order and write. اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. you - twins - Do - any - know ?

....

2. has - hair - She - curly.

....

B. 1. doesn't - She - glasses - wear.

....

2. are - the - not - Non-identical - same - twins.

....

6 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 - 4) sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠] كلمة [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Identical twins

Guiding elements :

- similar
- behave
- same

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson **6**

• Reading : Animal families
• CLIL :
Science : Adaptation in animals

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

polar قطبي

desert صحراء

wetland أرض رطبة

grassland
مرعى

polar bear
الدب القطبي

finch عصفور
(فصيلة طيور صغيرة الحجم)

addax antelope
الظبي اللولبي القرون

penguin
بطريق

cuttlefish
حبّار

lizard
سحلية

Extra vocabulary

species	أنواع / أصناف / سلالات	organism	كائن حي
survival	بقاء / نجاة	characteristics	سمات / مميزات
alive	على قيد الحياة	predator	مفترس
newborn	حديث الولادة	camouflaged	مموه
offspring	النسل	horns	قرون
surrounding	المنطقة المحيطة	heat	حرارة
layer	طبقة	seeds	بذور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
inherit	يرث	inherited
hunt	يصطاد	hunted
reflect	يعكس	reflected
develop	ينمي / يطور	developed
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	survived

Irregular

Present		Past
get	يحصل على	got
hear	يسمع	heard
keep	يحفظ	kept
come	يأتي	came
become	يصبح	became

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• a layer of	طبقة من	• in a litter of	فى قطيع [مجموعة] من
• adapt to	يتكيف / يتأقلم على	• a mix of	مزيج من
• hide from	يختبئ من	• over time	بمرور الوقت

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
to adapt	to change to suit your environment أن تتغير لتناسب بيئتك
trait	a key characteristic that an organism has, e.g. camouflaged fur or a long beak إحدى السمات الرئيسية التى يمتلكها الكائن الحى هى على سبيل المثال الفرو للتمويه أو منقار طويل
to inherit	to get characteristics from your parents الحصول على صفات من والديك
newborn	a baby animal that has just been born حيوان رضيع وُلد للتو
litter	a number of baby animals born from the same parents at the same time مجموعة من صغار الحيوانات لنفس الوالدين ولدوا فى نفس الوقت
offspring	a person's child, or an animal's or plant's baby طفل شخص أو صغير حيوان أو برعم نبات
organism	a living thing, all animals and plants كائن حى ، كل الحيوانات والنباتات
species	a group of animals or plants that are very similar and share the same characteristics مجموعة من الحيوانات أو النباتات المتشابهة جدًا و تشترك فى نفس الخصائص
survival	it means to continue staying alive. In the natural world, this can be hard for many plants and animals البقاء على قيد الحياة. فى العالم الطبيعى، هذا يمكن أن يكون صعب للكثير من النباتات والحيوانات
characteristics	special traits that make an organism special or different from others السمات الخاصة التى تجعل الكائن الحى مميزًا أو مختلفًا عن الآخرين

II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn.

انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Animal families

Look at this litter of **newborn**[1] rabbits. They look very different from their **parents**[2] ! But soon, their eyes will open and their **fur**[3] will grow. As they get older, the rabbits in a litter will look similar to each other, but not identical. The **offspring**[4] have inherited some traits from their mother and some traits from their father. They may have the same fur color as their mother, or their father – or a mix of the two.

Soon, their ears will start to grow, too. Having long ears is a key **characteristic**[5] of a rabbit. Why do rabbits have long ears ?

Rabbits have lots of **predators**[6] – bigger animals that hunt and eat them. Long ears help rabbits to hear well. Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming from. Long ears also help a rabbit stay cool in hot weather, or keep warm in cold weather. So, long ears are very important for a rabbit's survival. Over time, rabbits with longer ears become safer and healthier. They could live for longer and have more litters. They will pass this trait to their offspring. Therefore, their offspring will be adapted to have long ears.

All organisms have to adapt to their **environment**[7].

All species of animals and plants have their own characteristics and behave in ways that help them to survive.

[1] حديثى الولادة
[2] أباء
[3] فراء
[4] نسل
[5] سمة
[6] حيوانات مفترسة
[7] بيئة

انظر إلى مجموعة الأرانب حديثى الولادة. يبدون مختلفين جدًا عن والديهم ! لكن سرعان ما تفتح عيونهم وينمو فرائهم. عندما يصبحون أكبر، ستبدو الأرانب الصغيرة فى المجموعة متشابهة مع بعضها البعض، لكنها ليست متطابقة. يرث النسل بعض السمات من والدتهم وبعض السمات من والدهم. قد يكون لديهم نفس لون الفراء مثل والدتهم - أو والدهم أو مزيج من الإثنين.

لاحقًا ستبدأ آذان الأرانب فى النمو، أيضًا. أمتلاك آذان طويلة هى السمة الرئيسية للأرانب. لماذا الأرانب تمتلك آذان طويلة ؟ الأرانب لديها الكثير من الحيوانات المفترسة - الحيوانات الكبيرة التى تصطادها وتأكلها. تساعد الآذان الطويلة للأرانب على السمع جيدًا. يمكن أن تتحرك آذانهم، لذلك تعرف الأرانب مصدر الصوت. تساعد الآذان الطويلة أيضًا على البقاء باردًا فى الجو الحار والتدفئة فى الطقس البارد. لذلك، تعد الآذان الطويلة مهمة جدًا لبقاء الأرانب على قيد الحياة. بمرور الوقت، تصبح الأرانب ذات الأذنين الأطول أكثر أمانًا وصحة. يمكن أن يعيشوا لفترة أطول ولديهم المزيد من الصغار. سينقلوا هذه السمة إلى ذريتهم، ولذلك سيتكيف نسلهم أن يكون لديه آذان طويلة. على جميع الكائنات الحية أن تتكيف مع بيئتها. جميع أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات لها خصائصها الخاصة وتتصرف بطرق تساعدها على البقاء على قيد الحياة.

Answer the following question :

Learn

1. Do all organisms have to adapt to their environment ?
   - Yes, they do.

Practice

2. Why do rabbits have long ears ?

....

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about " The .... ".
   a. Pyramids b. boats c. triangles d. buildings

2. The underlined word "**special**" means " .... ".
   a. usual b. regular c. normal d. unusual

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do the Pyramids look like ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5. Why did the Ancient Egyptians build the Pyramids ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is – gold – Tutankhamun's – a beautiful – mask – artifact.

....

2. of – my – in – is –front – house – The tree .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We always put water for birds .... (behind) to the window.
2. The park is .... (under) the school and the museum.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. your family is more important than money

....

2. what did they use the metal for

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Trade in Ancient Egypt"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

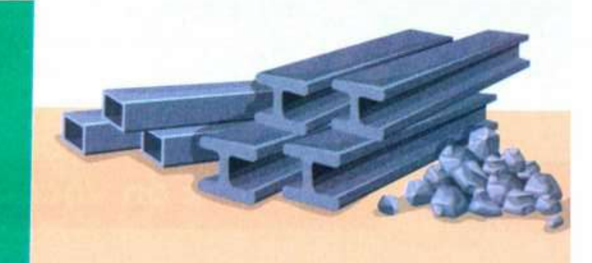
Guiding elements :

- metal
- economy

....
....
....
....
....

Lessons **4&5**

- Writing : A fact file
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

copper	معدن النحاس	meteorite	الحجر النيزكي - نيزك	heaven	الجنة - السماء
bronze	معدن البرونز	dagger	خنجر	scarab amulet	تميمة الجعران

Extra vocabulary

mines	مناجم	sheets	صفائح	display board	لوحة عرض
amazingly	من المثير للدهشة	salts	املاح	mirror	مرآة
agricultural	زراعي	fire	نار	template	نموذج
sadly	لسوء الحظ	through	من خلال / عبر	fortune	حظ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
mine	ينقب - يستخرج	mined	begin	يبدأ	began
decorate	يزين	decorated	wear	يرتدي	wore
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work with	يستخدم	later on	بعد ذلك
because of	بسبب	result of	نتيجة لـ
early on	في البداية	bring good fortune	تجلب الحظ الجيد
from the ground	من باطن الأرض		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Iron in Ancient Egypt	copper – iron	- The Ancient Egyptians worked with copper and bronze before using iron.
	mine – ground	- The Ancient Egyptians mined iron from the ground.
	metal – heaven	- The Ancient Egyptian called iron "the metal of heaven".
	dagger – meteorite	- Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

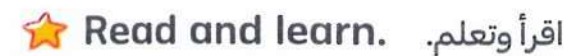
1. An axe is a/an .... tool that farmers need.
   a. decoration b. trade c. agricultural d. jewelry

2. .... and silver are important metals.
   a. Copper b. Cloth c. Glue d. Paper

3. Don't touch the ...., you may burn yourself.
   a. day b. fire c. statue d. jewelry

4. She used colored balls to .... the Christmas tree.
   a. reward b. damage c. destroy d. decorate

II Listening and Reading



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A fact file about Iron in Ancient Egypt ملف حقائق عن الحديد فى مصر القديمة

Iron in Ancient Egypt
الحديد فى مصر القديمة

▶ **When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron ?**

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

meteorites

• **متى بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الحديد؟**

- بدأ المصريون القدماء استخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ عام. قبل استخدام الحديد كانوا يستخدمون النحاس والبرونز.

▶ **Where did they find iron ?**

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

dagger

• **أين وجد المصريون القدماء الحديد؟**

- من المثير للدهشة، أن بعض من الحديد الذى استخدمه المصريون القدماء فى البداية كان من النيازك. فصنع الحرفيين فى مصر القديمة خنجر شهير لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من النيزك. كما قام المصريون القدماء أيضًا باستخراج الحديد من باطن الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب إلى حد ما استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار شديدة الحرارة حتى يذوب وهذا ما لم يكن ممكنًا فى كثير من الأحيان.

mine

▶ Why did they think iron was special ?

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky [because of the meteorites]. They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

• لماذا اعتقدوا أن الحديد معدن مميز؟

- لقد اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أن الحديد معدن نزل من السماء [بسبب سقوط النيازك]. فأطلقوا عليه اسم «معدن السماء». بالنسبة لهم، كان الحديد أثمن من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

▶ What did they use iron for ?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

• فيما استخدموا الحديد؟

- في البداية، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد في صناعة الأشياء الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة في صناعة الأدوات لأنه كان من السهل العثور عليها. ولكن فيما بعد، بدأت تظهر المعدات الزراعية والأسلحة المصنوعة من الحديد. ونتيجة لذلك حصل المصريون القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع الدول الأخرى.

III Writing Skill

Tips to write a fact file

• Research facts. ابحث عن حقائق.

• Use formal language. استخدم لغة رسمية.

• Use correct English. استخدم اللغة الإنجليزية بطريقة صحيحة.

• Use the appropriate tense to write your fact file.

استخدم الزمن المناسب لكتابة ملف الحقائق الخاص بك.

• Divide the text into questions and make notes under the following headings When .... ?, Why .... ? , Where .... ? , What .... ?

قم بتقسيم النص إلى اسئلة ودون ملاحظات مستخدمًا متى .... ؟ ، لماذا .... ؟ ، أين .... ؟ ، ماذا .... ؟

A fact file template

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

A fact file about silver in Ancient Egypt

▶ When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver ? متى بدأ المصريون القدماء استخدام معدن الفضة ؟	They started using silver thousands of years ago. بدأ المصريون القدماء استخدام معدن الفضة منذ الآف السنيين.
▶ Where did they find the silver ? أين وجدوا معدن الفضة ؟	There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade. لم يكن هناك الكثير من مناجم الفضة فى مصر، لذلك نعتقد أن المصريون القدماء أحضروا معدن الفضة من الدول الأخرى عن طريق التجارة.
▶ What did the Ancient Egyptians use silver for ? فيما استخدم المصريون القدماء معدن الفضة ؟	They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues. استخدموه فى صناعة المجوهرات والمرايا. كما استخدموا صفائح الفضة لتزيين التماثيل.
▶ Why don't we find many silver Ancient Egyptian artifacts ? لماذا لا نجد الكثير من القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة المصنوعة من الفضة ؟	Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today. لأن الفضة معدن غير متين. ولسوء الحظ ، دمرت الأملاح المتواجدة فى المقابر الكثير منه، لذلك لم يعد فى استطاعتنا رؤية كثيرًا منه اليوم.

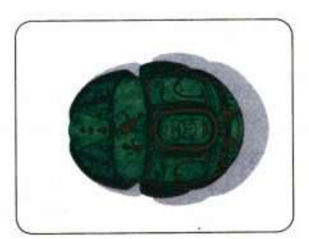
Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A display board for the Scarab Amulet

Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.



تميمة الجعران - مصر

تميمة الجعران هذه من مصر القديمة ويبلغ عمرها أكثر من ثلاث آلاف عام. وهى مصنوعة من النحاس. كان الناس يرتدون مجوهرات بها صورة الجعران لتحميهم وتجلب لهم الحظ السعيد.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There weren't many silver .... in Egypt.
   a. mines b. hotels c. houses d. bottles
2. The Ancient Egyptians used .... to make jewelry and mirrors.
   a. wood b. plastic c. silver d. iron
3. They used sheet silver to .... statues.
   a. drink b. decorate c. eat d. dream
4. Sadly, the .... in the tombs destroyed a lot of silver.
   a. sugar b. rice c. sweets d. salts

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Farmers always use .... tools to dig the soil for growing plants.
   a. harmful b. agricultural c. golden d. broken
2. The statue is made from .... and bronze.
   a. copper b. template c. heaven d. fire
3. They .... iron from the ground.
   a. mine b. decorate c. cut d. grow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

iron – copper – fire – craftsmen

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with [1] .... and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian [2] .... made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot [3] .... to melt, which often wasn't possible. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians – tools – The Ancient – bronze – for – used – making.

....

2. did – they – iron – using – When – start ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. .... (Do) you do your homework yesterday ? (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)

2. The boy hid .... (in) the door, so we couldn't see him.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. why was iron difficult to work with

....

2. there weren't many silver mines in egypt.

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"A metal from Ancient Egypt that interests you" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- gold
- jewelry

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron thousands of years ago. They used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

The text is about "....................".
Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "....................".
Or : The text talks about " ....".
Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Trade in Ancient Egypt
b. Iron in Ancient Egypt
c. Stone in Ancient Egypt
d. Glass in Ancient Egypt

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

The text is about "....................".
Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "....................".
Or : The text talks about "....................".
Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Statues in Ancient Egypt
b. Birds in Ancient Egypt
c. Jewelry in Ancient Egypt
d. Weapons in Ancient Egypt

2 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was [wasn't] You / We / They / اسم جمع + were [weren't]	ضمائر الفاعل مع [verb to be] فى الماضى فى الأثبات والنفى
Subj. فاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل Subj. فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر Wh-word + did + subj. فاعل + inf.المصدر + باقي السؤال ?	فى جملة [الماضى البسيط] نستخدم [التصريف الثانى] وفى النفى نستخدم [didn't] وبعدها المصدر وفى السؤال نستخدم [did] كفعل مساعد
in front of – on – in – next to – between – behind – under	حروف جر خاصة بالمكان

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 My house is ...... [between] to the park.	next	تستخدم [next] لوجود [to]
2 There's a tree ...... [on] front of the house.	in	تستخدم [in] لوجود [front of]
3 I ...... [don't] visit my grandpa last week.	didn't	تستخدم [didn't] لوجود [last]
4 Did she ...... [bought] a dress ?	buy	نستخدم المصدر بعد [Did]

Practice

Write the reason. ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 We ...... [visit] our grandma last Friday.	visited	....
2 Yesterday, I ...... [have] meat for lunch.	had	....
3 We ...... [go] to the park three hours ago.	went	....
4 He didn't ...... [did] his homework.	do	....

Write the correction. ◄ اكتب التصحيح.

1 The store is ...... [next] the school and the bank.	....	نستخدم [between] لوجود مكانين فى الجملة
2 They ...... [don't] watch TV yesterday.	....	ماضى بسيط منفى لوجود yesterday
3 Did you ...... [listening] to music ?	....	نستخدم المصدر فى السؤال بعد [did]
4 There's a photo ...... [in] the wall.	....	نستخدم حرف الجر [on] بمعنى [على] مع كلمة [wall]

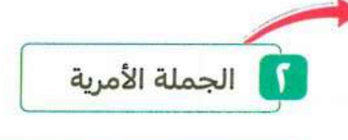
3 Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1	have – We – a – climate – hot.
2	used – a lot – glass – of – They.
3	with – They – built – granite – the Pyramids.
4	covered – artifacts – They – gold – in.
5	popular – Cats – Egypt – in – pets – are.
6	to – Al-Azhar – I – Park – went.
7	a boat – ride – on – We – went.
8	works – Mr Tarek – the museum – at.
9	Cairo – I – up – in – grew.
10	iron – thought – They – special – was.

1 فاعل	2 فعل	3 باقي الجملة .
We	are	excited.



٢ الجملة الأمرية

1	metal – make – Use – to – weapons.
2	fresh – in – Walk – air – the.
3	pull – Don't – that.

1 Don't	2 مصدر الفعل	3 باقي السؤال .
Don't	be	selfish.

٣ الجملة الاستفهامية

1	silver – the – Where – find – did – they ?
2	did – What – do – you – there ?
3	go – you – Did – hiking ?
4	did – Why – go – they – the museum – to ?
5	did – What – study – you – at university ?

1 كلمة استفهام	2 فعل مساعد	3 فاعل	4 فعل	5 باقي السؤال ?
What	did	they	use	iron for ?

4 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٥ جملة).

1 Ancient Egyptian artifacts

We have so many artifacts in Egypt[1]. Egypt has a hot, dry climate[2]. It is good for preserving these artifacts[3]. They aren't damaged by cold and wet weather[4]. The Ancient Egyptians made the Pyramids from granite[5]. It is a very hard and durable stone[6]. It could last a long time[7].

2 Metal in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded[8]. They first found metal in rocks[9]. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes[10]. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food[11]. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell[12]. Silver was also used, but was rarer[13]. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to develop[14].

3 Animals in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets[15]. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house[16]. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe[17]. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes[18]. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain[19]. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats[20].

4 Iron in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used copper and bronze before iron[21]. They started using iron more than 5,000 years ago[22]. It was difficult to work with iron because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible[23]. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite[24]. They also mined iron from the ground[25].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Amazing artifacts

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

hiking - rain - play - Park - picnic

Mayar : Hi Nesma ! Did you have a nice weekend ?

Nesma: Hi Mayar ! Yes, I did. I went to Al-Azhar (1) .... with my family.

Mayar : What did you do there ?

Nesma: We had a (2) .... Then we went on a boat ride. It was great!

Mayar : Did you go (3) .... ?

Nesma: No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to (4) ....

My Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .... (go) to the library last week.
2. Did you .... (made) a cake for the birthday yesterday ?
3. The school is next .... (on) the post office.
4. The hospital is .... (under) the park and the shopping mall.
5. .... (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday ?

My Writing

3 Write a fact file of about (60-80) words about "A metal from Ancient Egypt"

Guiding questions :

- When did the Ancient Egyptians start using this metal ?
- Where did they find this metal ?
- What did they use it for ?
- Why did they think that metal is special ?

....
....
....
....
....

My Project

4 Make an artifact display board.

....
....
....
....
....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 7

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

artifacts	قطع أثرية	grain	حبوب
preserve	يحفظ - يحتفظ	wisdom	حكمة
granite	حجر الجرانيت	mummified	محنط
economy	اقتصاد	iron	حديد
tomb	مقبرة	trade	تجارة / يتاجر
falcon	صقر	weapon	سلاح
baboon	قرد البابون	mask	قناع
		dagger	خنجر

Pronunciation

/er/

Language

1 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative : Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex.: He went to the museum yesterday.

Negative : Subject + did not = (didn't) + (inf.) + (باقى الجملة).

ex.: I didn't go on vacation with my family.

Yes / No question : Did + subject + (inf.) + (باقى السؤال)?

ex.: Did you have a nice time yesterday?
- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Wh- question :

Q.W + did + subject + (inf.) + (باقى السؤال)?

ex.: Where did you find your books ?
- In the bookcase.

2 Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on على – in فى – between بين – in front of أمام – under تحت –
next to بجوار / بجانب – behind خلف

Test 1 on Unit 7

• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I went to the Museum of Ancient ....
   a. Art b. History c. Music d. World
2. The museum was full of Ancient Egyptian ....
   a. artifacts b. people c. books d. buildings
3. Mr Ashraf was our .... at the museum.
   a. manager b. doctor c. teacher d. guide
4. We .... our visit to the museum.
   a. enjoyed b. forgot c. wrote d. read

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The woman was very happy when her dream ....
   a. lost b. came true c. fell over d. ran away
2. The Ancient Egyptians needed .... to hunt animals for food.
   a. metal b. weapons c. coins d. papyrus
3. Don't .... the pot with your hands. It's very hot.
   a. celebrate b. make c. touch d. change

3 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mask – grain – snake – artifacts

Ancient Egyptian artifacts are amazing. One of the most beautiful (1) .... from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask. It was found in his tomb. The (2) .... is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a (3) .... on the top of his head.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a **popular** metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to develop.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about " .... in Ancient Egypt".
   a. Food b. Metal c. Clothes d. Schools
2. The underlined word "**popular**" means ....
   a. hard b. cheap c. unknown d. famous

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   ....
4. Why was trade in Ancient Egypt useful ?
   ....
5. Which one is harder metal or stone ?
   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians – gold – use – liked – The Ancient – to.
   ....
2. Egyptians – pets – What animals – did – the Ancient – keep as ?
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Where .... [does] you go last weekend ?
2. The library is .... [behind] to the computer room.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i went to Al-Azhar Park with my family
   ....
2. did you have a nice weekend
   ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Materials in Ancient Egypt"

Guiding elements : • granite • glass

....
....
....
....

Test 2 on Unit 7

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last summer, we went to a ....
   a. park b. museum c. temple d. zoo
2. There were many interesting .... to see.
   a. objects b. birds c. artifacts d. fruits
3. We found a room that had lots of animal ....
   a. statues b. foods c. legs d. cars
4. Animals were very important in Ancient Egyptians' ....
   a. life b. farm c. houses d. culture

[القاهرة - باب الشعرية ٢٠٢٤]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... are made of iron. [المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٤]
   a. Weapons b. Caves c. Cakes d. Grains
2. The .... told us nice information in our tour. [المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤]
   a. guide b. tour c. pharaoh d. artifacts
3. Ali makes good decisions because he has a lot of .... [جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤]
   a. wisdom b. problems c. sports d. weapons

3 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

silver - artifacts - animal - culture

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting (1) .... to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animals statues because animals were very important in their (2) .... First, we saw statues in gold and (3) .... Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. [اسيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe.

They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The general idea of the text is about "......................." .
   a. Cats b. Houses c. Grain d. Honey
2. The cats kept houses free of .... like snakes and rats.
   a. pets b. toys c. games d. pests

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Who produced a lot of grain ?

....

4. Why were cats good pets ?

....

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

[اسيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. built - the Pyramids - They - granite - with. [اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. a hot, - in Egypt - We - dry - have - climate. [الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٤]

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I .... [am] at the park yesterday. [المنيا - البلينا ٢٠٢٤]
2. Where did you .... [went] last week ? [القاهرة - البساتين ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

1. egypt is an amazing country [سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. When did the Ancient egyptians start using iron [اسيوط - صدفا ٢٠٢٤]

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A visit to the museum"

Guiding elements : • statues • artifacts

....

....

.... [القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢٤]

1 Read and complete the dialogue.

"artifacts – want – interesting – guide – friend"

Mr Amir : Good morning and welcome to the museum. My name is Amir and I am your (1) ....

Zeyad : Good morning. I am Zeyad and this is my (2) .... Omar.

Mr Amir : What do you (3) .... to see here ?

Zeyad : We want to see some Ancient Egyptian (4) ....

Mr Amir : We have a lot here.

Zeyad : That's (5) .... ! Why do we have so many of them in Egypt ?

Mr Amir : Because the weather here is hot and dry.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word.

1. granite – gold – teacher – glass [..................]
2. wet – hot – read – valuable [..................]
3. What – When – grain – Who [..................]
4. understand – dagger – plant – decorate [..................]
5. statue – artifact – tomb – sky [..................]

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved .... and the ibis which represented wisdom.
   a. crows b. pelicans c. falcons d. bees
2. .... is a very hard and durable stone.
   a. Sand b. Glass c. Clay d. Granite
3. Buying and selling things between countries is ....
   a. trade b. statue c. economy d. wisdom
4. Gold is a valuable and .... metal.
   a. durable b. liquid c. cheap d. dangerous
5. " .... " means using your knowledge to make good decisions.
   a. Wisdom b. Climate c. Grain d. Shop
6. Who did you .... last night ?
   a. sees b. seen c. saw d. see
7. My dad .... his car in 2003.
   a. is buying b. buy c. buys d. bought
8. There .... any cars in Ancient Egypt.
   a. didn't b. wasn't c. weren't d. aren't
9. I had a math lesson two days ....
   a. the last b. yesterday c. ago d. last
10. Last week, I .... some juice with my friends.
   a. drank b. drink c. drinks d. drinking

4 Reorder.

1. adored - Ancient - cats – The – really - Egyptians.
2. did - she - weekend – What – last - do ?
3. make - used - tools - to – They – metal.
4. did - use - you – What – materials - other ?
5. built - the Pyramids – They – granite - with.

5 Write a paragraph of Five sentences on.

"Iron in Ancient Egypt"

Guiding elements :

• mine • dagger • meteorites • precious • rare

....

....

UNIT

8

Toys and games

دُمىّ وألعاب

Aims of Unit Eight : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثامنة :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أناقش وأكتب عن الدُمىّ وألعاب الأطفال والأنشطة.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
  - أستمع وأقرأ محادثة عن الدمى والألعاب القديمة.
- use verb intensifiers.
  - استخدام عبارات التوكيد.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
  - أستمع إلى وأفهم قصة عن دمية.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
  - أستخدم الأفعال التى يتبعها ing-.
- spell and say words containing gh or ght.
  - أتهجى وأقول الكلمات التى تحتوى على gh أو ght.
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
  - أستخدم المخططات الدائرية والمخططات الشريطية.
- write a description of my favorite game.
  - أكتب وصف للعبتى المفضلة.
- design and make a simple board game.
  - أصمم وأصنع لعبة لوحية بسيطة.

Lesson 1 ▸ A box of toys

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

doll's house
بيت الدمية

rollerblades
حذاء تزحلق

action figure
مجسم (لشخصية كرتونية)

marbles
كرات زجاجية (بلى)

board game
لعبة لوحية

cuddly toy
دُمية ليّنة

train set
مجموعة لعبة القطار

skateboard
لوح تزلج

Extra vocabulary

toys	ألعاب أطفال	favorite	مفضل	box	صندوق
actually	في الواقع / فعليًا	brilliant	رائع	old	قديم
though	مع ذلك	younger	أصغر سنًا	successful	ناجح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited
try	يجرب / يحاول	tried
invent	يخترع	invented

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
know	يعرف	knew
beat	يهزم	beat
think	يعتقد	thought

• Did you know ?

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

• اللعب مفيد لنا بعدة طرق مختلفة. عندما نلعب، نشعر بالسعادة. نتعلم أيضًا عن العالم وأنفسنا. عندما نلعب، نتعلم كيفية حل المشكلات وتكوين صداقات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• make up	يخترع / يبتكر	• play with	يلعب بـ / مع
• have a go	يجرب	• look for	يبحث عن
• go fast	ينطلق بسرعة	• after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة
• very often	أغلب الأحيان	• So did I!	وأنا أيضًا!

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
beat	be more successful than someone in a game أن تكون أكثر نجاحًا من شخص ما في لعبة
have a go	try something أن تجرب شيء ما
made up	thought of or invented تم التفكير به أو اختراعه

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A box of toys	box - old toys	Yaseen found a box of his old toys at his grandma's house.
	action figures	Yaseen and Fares loved playing with their action figures.
	favorite - train set	Adam's favorite toy was a train set.
	love - cuddly toy	Fares would love to see his favorite cuddly toy.
	rollerblades - small	Yaseen's old rollerblades are too small for him now.

05 min.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To have a go is to .... something.
   a. dry   b. fly   c. try   d. fry
2. My little sister always takes her favorite .... toy to her bed.
   a. cuddly   b. books   c. bookcase   d. skateboard
3. I want to buy a .... I could go really fast on it.
   a. marble   b. board game   c. skateboard   d. box
4. My favorite .... is the train set.
   a. subject   b. house   c. lesson   d. toy
5. To .... means to be more successful than someone in a game.
   a. think   b. beat   c. look   d. like

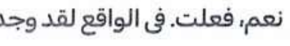
II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
• تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

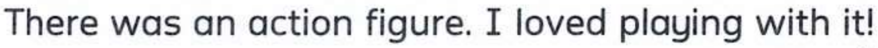
Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen? هل زرت جدتك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع يا ياسين؟

Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.



نعم، فعلت. فى الواقع لقد وجدت صندوقًا من ألعابى القديمة فى منزلها.

What did you find in there ? ماذا وجدت به؟



There was an action figure. I loved playing with it!
كان هناك مجسم كرتونى. أحببت اللعب به !

I loved playing with my old action figures, too ! I <u>**made up**</u> lots of games for them. أحببت اللعب بمجسماتى القديمة أيضًا ! لقد اخترعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.
عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة هى مجموعة القطار.

I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though.
لم يكن لدى مجموعة قطار، لكن أختى كان لديها منزل دمية كبير. كلانا لعب بها. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. بالرغم من ذلك لقد وجدت حذاء التزحلق القديم الخاص بى.

Brilliant! Did you <u>**have a go**</u> on them ? رائع! هل قمت بتجربتهم؟

No, I wanted to, but they were too small. لا، كنت أرغب فى ذلك، لكنهم كانوا صغاراً جدًا.

I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard. I could go really fast after a while! لم يكن لدى حذاء تزحلق، لكن كان لدى لوح تزلج. كنت أستطيع أن أذهب بسرعة بعد فترة قصيرة!

Cool! Did you play board games when you were younger ?
رائع! هل كنتم تلعبون ألعاب لوحية عندما كنتم أصغر سنًا ؟

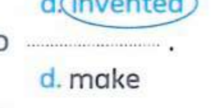
Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me! نعم، كنا نلعب ألعاب لوحية. كنت ألعبها مع أخى الأكبر، لكنه فى العادة كان يهزمنى!

We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles.
لم نكن نلعب الألعاب اللوحية عادة، ولكننا لعبنا لعبة الكرات الزجاجية.

So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.
وأنا أيضًا! أعتقد أننى سأبحث عن بعض ألعابى القديمة لاحقًا. أحب أن أرى دُميتى اللينة المفضلة مرة أخرى.

Determine the meaning of phrases.
حدد معانى العبارات.

Learn 1. The underlined phrase "**made up**" means ....
a. played b. knew c. visited d. invented



Practice 2. The underlined phrase "**have a go**" means to ....
a. try b. look c. play d. make

General Exercises | on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Fares is in grade ....
   a. two b. six c. three d. one
2. Fares found a box of his ....
   a. wood b. books c. new clothes d. old toys
3. There was an action .... inside the box.
   a. film b. figure c. flag d. ball
4. Fares' favorite toy was a/an ....
   a. marble b. action figure c. train set d. skateboard

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I played games with my friend yesterday, but he .... me.
   a. saw b. beat c. wrote d. read
2. SB I like .... games for my action figures.
   a. breaking b. making up c. throwing away d. reading
3. My brother taught me how to ride a ....
   a. house b. skateboard c. desk d. bag

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

visit – board – cuddly – figure

My name is Adam. I like inventing new things. Last month, I made up lots of games for my action [1] .... When I was young, I loved rollerblades and skateboards. My sister, Manal has a [2] .... toy. It's soft and cute. I made up a doll's house for my sister's doll. Sometimes, we like to play [3] .... games together.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. now – rollerblades – My old – too small – are – for me .

....

2. did – find – What – you – the box – in ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

1. we didn't play board games very often

....

2. what was your favorite toy

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Hany.

Tell him about your toys. Your name is Badr. Your email address is badr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- rollerblades
- action figure

From	
To	
Subject	

....,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

- I was very good at hide and seek
- Language Focus

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

skipping لعبة الوثب بالحبل

hide and seek لعبة الغميضة

hopscotch لعبة القفز (الحجلة)

Extra vocabulary

colored chalk	طباشير ملون	stickers	ملصقات	difficult	صعب
imagination	خيال	knee pad	ضمادة الركبة / واقي الركبة	climbing	التسلق
squares	مربعات			really	للغاية
at all	على الإطلاق	quite	إلى حد ما	very = so	جدًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
prefer	يفضل	preferred
practice	يتدرب	practiced
skip	يقفز	skipped

Irregular

Present		Past
hide	يختبئ	hid
draw	يرسم	drew
hurt	يجرح / يصيب	hurt
fall off	يسقط	fell off
ride	يركب (دراجة)	rode

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make up stories	يؤلف قصص	wear a helmet	يرتدي خوذة
good at	جيد في	It's interesting !	إنه ممتع !

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Games	good at - hide	Rania was good at hide and seek.
	thought - hopscotch	Rania thought hopscotch was quite good.
	skipping	Sarah's brother didn't like skipping.
	marbles	Sarah and her brother played marbles together.

Youssef's favorite toy	favorite - skateboard	Youssef's favorite toy was his skateboard.
	love - play	Youssef loved going to the park and played with his friends.
	got - first	Youssef got his first skateboard when he was eight.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The children are playing .... and seek in the park.
   a. hide   b. draw   c. hurt   d. fall
2. I always wear a .... when I ride my bike to protect my head.
   a. balloon   b. sticker   c. belt   d. helmet
3. We .... very hard for the basketball match.
   a. ride   b. practice   c. skip   d. hurt

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet ?
مرحبًا رانيا، هل بدأتِ مشروع دُمى الأطفال والألعاب بعد ؟

Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!
مرحبًا سارة. نعم، لقد بدأت ذلك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مثير للاهتمام حقًا!

Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger ?
نعم، وهو كذلك. ما هى الألعاب التى كنتِ تحبين لعبها عندما كنت أصغر سنًا ؟

I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding!
اعتقد أن الغميضة كانت ممتعة. لقد كنت جيدة جدًا فى الاختباء!

I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.
لقد كنت جيدة فى ذلك أيضًا! كان يمكننى الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًا. لقد أحببت حقًا لعب القفز (الحجلة) مع أصدقائى. استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.
أعتقد أن لعبة القفز [الحجلة] كانت جيدة إلى حد ما، لكننى كنت أفضل لعبة الوثب بالحبل.

I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult!
كنت أحب الوثب بالحبل، لكننى لم أكن جيدة فيه. بعض ألعاب الوثب بالحبل صعبة للغاية!

Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!
نعم، إنهم كذلك. كان على أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختى!

Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.
آه، أخى لم يتدرب معى. لم يكن يحب الوثب بالحبل على الإطلاق! رغم ذلك، كنا كثيرًا ما نلعب الكرات الزجاجية [البلى] معًا.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
• تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My Favorite Toy

by Youssef

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

لعبتى المفضلة

بقلم يوسف

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة هى لوح التزلج. أحببت الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائى. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضًا، وكان الأمر ممتعًا حقًا. أردنا جميعًا أن نذهب [نتزلج] بسرعة جدًا ! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بى أسود اللون وعليه ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء. اضطررت إلى ارتداء خوذة وواقى الركبة. إنه أمر مؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من على لوح التزلج ! حصلت على لوح التزلج الأول عندما كنت فى الثامنة من عمرى، وكان صغيرًا إلى حد ما. أنا لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن، لأن لدى واحدًا أكبر.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. Where did Youssef play with his skateboard ?
– He played with his skateboard in the park.

Practice 2. When did Youssef get his first skateboard ?
– ....

⭐ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

عندما كانت أمينة صغيرة، كانت تحب الألعاب التى تستخدم الكثير من الخيال. كانت جيدة جدًا فى تأليف القصص. كان لديها بيت دمية وبعض ألعاب الأطفال وبعض المجسمات الكرتونية.

Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

لقد استمتعت نور حقًا باللعب فى الخارج عندما كانت أصغر سنًا. كانت تحب الجرى والتسلق ولعب التنس. لقد كانت جيدة إلى حد ما فى كرة القدم أيضًا.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What was Amina good at ?
- She was good at making up stories.

Practice 2. What did Nour like when she was younger ?
- ....

III Language Focus

▶ Intensifiers عبارات التوكيد

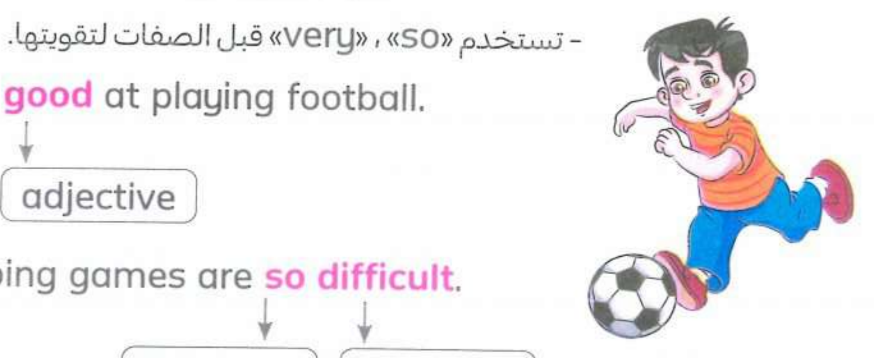
[really , very , so , at all , quite]

- We use **intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

نستخدم «عبارات التوكيد» لتقوية الصفات والأفعال.

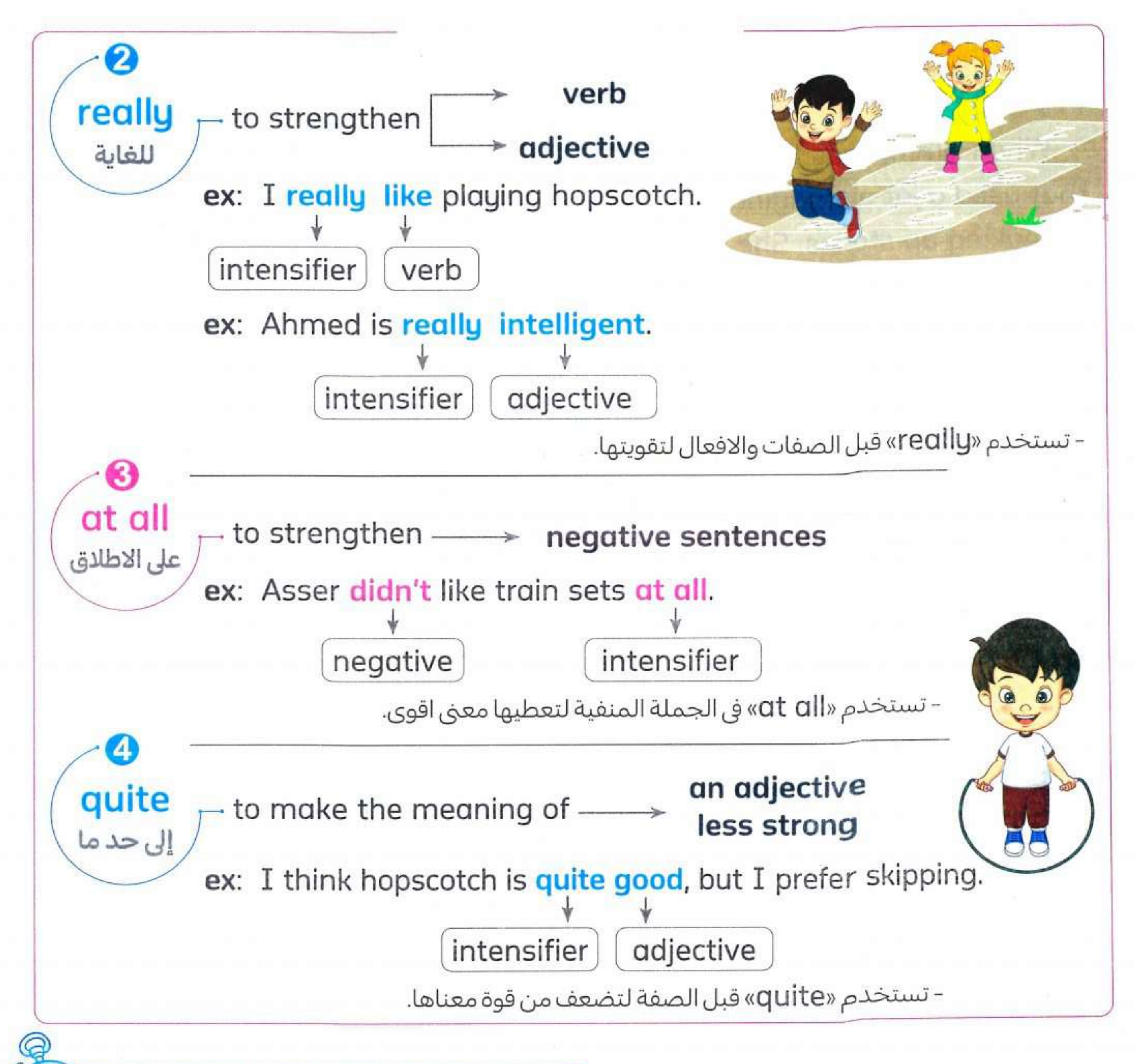
1 very & so جداً → to strengthen ⟶ **an adjective**

- تستخدم «so» ، «very» قبل الصفات لتقويتها.



ex: He is $\underset{\text{intensifier}}{\textbf{very}}$ $\underset{\text{adjective}}{\textbf{good}}$ at playing football.

ex: Some skipping games are $\underset{\text{intensifier}}{\textbf{so}}$ $\underset{\text{adjective}}{\textbf{difficult}}$.



2 **really** للغاية — to strengthen → **verb** / **adjective**

ex: I **really like** playing hopscotch.

- really → intensifier
- like → verb

ex: Ahmed is **really intelligent**.

- really → intensifier
- intelligent → adjective

- تستخدم «really» قبل الصفات والافعال لتقويتها.

3 **at all** على الاطلاق — to strengthen → **negative sentences**

ex: Asser **didn't** like train sets **at all**.

- didn't → negative
- at all → intensifier

- تستخدم «at all» في الجملة المنفية لتعطيها معنى اقوى.

4 **quite** إلى حد ما — to make the meaning of → **an adjective less strong**

ex: I think hopscotch is **quite good**, but I prefer skipping.

- quite → intensifier
- good → adjective

- تستخدم «quite» قبل الصفة لتضعف من قوة معناها.

05 min. Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▸ Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I don't like video games .... (really) . [كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٤]
2. This book is not funny .... (quite). [بورسعيد - جنوب بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤]
3. There is no food in the kitchen .... (very).
4. I think hopscotch is .... (very) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
5. I .... (very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
6. I don't like football .... (quite).
7. You're .... (so) good at hide and seek, but you are perfect at skateboarding.
8. Hany .... (very) enjoys playing marbles.
9. My brother is .... (at all) good at football. He always beats me !
10. The house is .... (quiet) beautiful.
11. She didn't like hide and seek .... (all). She couldn't hide.

General Exercises | on Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Amira is .... years old.
   a. ten b. eleven c. thirteen d. twenty
2. Amira liked games that used a lot of ....
   a. shapes b. imagination c. ropes d. wheels
3. Amira was good at making up ....
   a. sports b. games c. toys d. stories
4. Amira's favorite toy was the.......................... .
   a. action figure b. train set c. cuddly toy d. board game

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. .... and running are outside activities.
   a. Computer games b. Watching TV c. Reading d. Climbing
2. I used different colored .... to draw the squares.
   a. chalk b. helmets c. stickers d. ropes
3. Wearing pads protects our .... if we fall off the skateboard.
   a. eyes b. ears c. stomach d. knees

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

squares - park - hide - younger

Nour is in grade six. She started a project about toys and games. She wrote about games she liked when she was (1) .... She liked her skateboard. She loved going to the (2) .... and played with her friends there. She enjoyed playing (3) .... and seek game with her friends, too. She could hide a very long time. She also liked playing hopscotch. It was very interesting!

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of games that we like to play with our friends. Many of them are very **interesting**. Musical chairs game is a very interesting one. To play it, we put some chairs less than players. If we are six players, we put five chairs. We play some music. We run around the chairs, but we should be ready to sit when the music stops. The player without a chair is out.

Skipping is also very enjoyable, but it's so difficult. We have to practice a lot to play it. Sometimes, my friends and I play marbles and hopscotch together. Hopscotch and musical chairs are quite good, but I prefer skipping.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**interesting**" is the opposite of ....

a. good b. boring c. enjoyable d. funny

2. If we are eight players, we need .... chairs in musical chairs game.

a. five b. six c. seven d. four

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do we need to play musical chairs game ?

....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

5. What's the writer's favorite game ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. at all – He – like – skipping – doesn't.

....

2. at – your – What – brother – was – good ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I .... [very] liked playing with a train set.

2. This film isn't interesting .... [quite].

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i was really good at hide and seek

....

2. my favorite toy is my skateboard

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your favorite games"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • imagination • good at

....

....

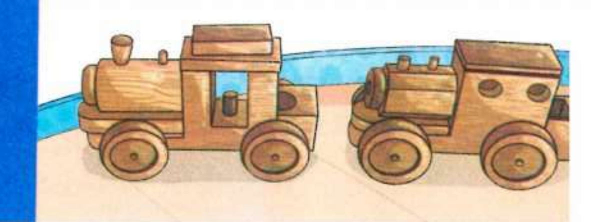
....

....

....

Lesson 3

- We loved playing with our train set
- Language Focus
- Pronunciation
- CLIL: Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

stall	مقصورة (مكان لبيع السلع)	sail	شراع	trunk	خرطوم الفيل
store	متجر	button	زر (جهاز)	shopping	التسوق

Extra vocabulary

strong	قوى	poster	ملصق	machine	آلة / ماكينة
pieces	قِطَع	cloth	قماش	amazing	مدهش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يتحرك	moved	sell	يبيع	sold
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	come	يأتى	came
finish	ينتهى	finished	let	يترك / يدع	let
tidy up	يرتب	tidied up	fly	يطير	flew
paint	يلون	painted	break	يكسر	broke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the store	فى المتجر	fly in a plane	يسافر بالطائرة

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
sail	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move قطع قوية من القماش تجعل القارب يتحرك
stall	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market منضدة كبيرة تستخدمها لبيع الأشياء فى السوق
trunk	the long nose of an elephant الأنف الطويل للفيل
button	what you touch to make a machine work ما تلمسه لتجعل الآلة تعمل

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Ali's at the store	shopping - store	Ali was shopping with his parents at the store.
	stall - toys	Ali saw a stall that sold toys.
	thought - amazing	Ali thought the toys were amazing.
	buy - train	Ali's dad bought a train.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move is called ....
   a. soul b. sale c. sail d. smoke

2. I touch the .... to turn the light on.
   a. boat b. table c. poster d. button

3. Yesterday, I went to the .... to buy some fruits and vegetables.
   a. store b. house c. hospital d. bank

4. A .... is the long nose of an elephant.
   a. stem b. trunk c. poster d. machine

5. My sister loves .... She usually goes to the mall to buy clothes.
   a. painting b. flying c. shopping d. working

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

AudioScript

Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day.

Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home.

"Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade."

"Thanks, Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.

"OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking."

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.

The man picked up a train. "Look at this", he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago," Ali replied. "But this is brilliant."

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set."

He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!"

Dad laughed, "You can play with it, too!"

كان على يشعر بالتعب. وكان والديه يقومون بالتسوق فى السوق. كان اليوم حارًا. كانت أقدام على تؤلمه، وأراد حقًا أن يذهب للمنزل. سألت الأم : "هل أنت بخير يا على ؟" "نحن غالبًا انتهينا من التسوق. نحتاج إلى الطماطم من هذه المقصورة. انتظر هنا سأحضر لك بعض من عصير الليمون". قال على : "شكرًا لك يا أمى". انتظر على ثم رأى كشك به ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كان يوجد مراكب، قطارات وحيوانات. كان والدا على يختارون الخضروات، لذلك سأل على إذا ما كان بإمكانه أن ينظر إلى الألعاب. قال الأب "نعم" "لكن لن نشترى ألعاب اليوم !" قال على "حسنًا، سأستمتع بالمشاهدة".

كان هناك رجلًا عجوزًا جالسًا خلف المقصورة يصنع نموذج لقطة صغيرة من الخشب. ورأى على ينظر إلى الألعاب وابتسم.

أخذ الرجل قطارًا وقال : "انظر إلى هذا"، ودفع زر القطار الموجود أسفل القطار، فتحركت العجلات. وعندما وضعه على المنضدة التى يعرض عليها الألعاب بدأت لعبة القطار تتحرك. وسأله "هل تحب القطارات ؟" أجاب على : "لقد توقفت عن اللعب بمجموعة القطار الخاصة بى منذ سنوات قليلة" "لكن هذا القطار رائعًا".

نظر على إلى القطار مرة أخرى. لقد كان صغيرًا، ولكن جميلًا للغاية. وكانت الألعاب الأخرى على الطاولة مدهشة أيضًا. كان يوجد فيل وكان يحرك خرطومه، وكان يوجد قارب به شراع جميل من القماش.

جاء والد على ليرى فقال "واو ! أنا وأخى كان لدينا قطارًا مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلًا !" "كنا نحب اللعب بمجموعة القطار الخاصة بنا". فإلتقط الأب القطار مبتسمًا قائلًا : "سآخذه!" ضحك على قائلًا "أعتقد انك قلت أننا لن نشترى ألعابًا اليوم، يا والدى!" ضحك الأب قائلًا : "يمكنك أن تلعب به أيضًا!"

III Language Focus

▶ Verbs followed by (inf. + ing)

▶ **Some verbs are followed by [inf. + ing] :**

بعض الأفعال يتبعها [inf. + ing].

enjoy يستمتع	stop يتوقف	continue يستمر	like يحب
finish ينتهي	hate يكره	imagine يتخيل	prefer يفضل

+ [inf. + ing]

ex.: - Amal imagined flying in a plane.
- I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.

ملاحظات على إضافة [ing] للفعل :

▶ When a verb ends in [a consonant + e] , take away the [–e] and add [–ing].

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ [e] [قبله حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing].

write ⟶ **writing** **hike** ⟶ **hiking**

▶ When a verb ends in [a vowel + a consonant] , write the last consonant twice and add [–ing].

إذا انتهى الفعل [بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك] نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing]

[بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد] .

swim ⟶ **swimming** **sit** ⟶ **sitting**

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▶ **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Maged prefers .... (eat) fish. [الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤]
2. We enjoy .... (cook) pizza. [الدقهلية - السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٤]
3. She finished .... (do) her homework at 6 : 00. [جنوب سيناء - طور سيناء ٢٠٢٤]
4. She hates .... (wake) up early, so she is always late.
5. He wanted to continue .... (work) all the night.
6. People stopped .... (write) letters a long time ago.
7. He likes .... (read) books.
8. We prefer .... (drink) milk.
9. SB They finished .... (paint) the posters and tidied up.

IV Pronunciation

★ **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد.

[gh] are pronounced / f / in these words		[gh] are silent in these words	
coughed	كَحَّ / سَعَل	drought	جفاف
enough	كافٍ	bought	اشترى
rough	خشن	daughter	ابنة
tough	قاسٍ	thought	فَكر
laughed	ضَحكِ	brought	جَلبَ / أحضر
laughter	الضحك		
draughts	لعبة الداما		

★ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

1. This game is called draughts.

2. Wael bought some marbles yesterday.

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle.

1. draughts / drought
2. bought / brought
3. enough / tough
4. thought / laughter

2 SB Read and circle the /f/ sound.

1. We laugh when we play draughts.
2. She thought about the toy that she bought .
3. A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

3 Do you hear /f/ ? Put the words in the correct place in the table.

coughed - daughter - brought - draughts - laughed - thought

Yes	No
....	....
....	....
....	....

V CLIL : Math

Using Graphs

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

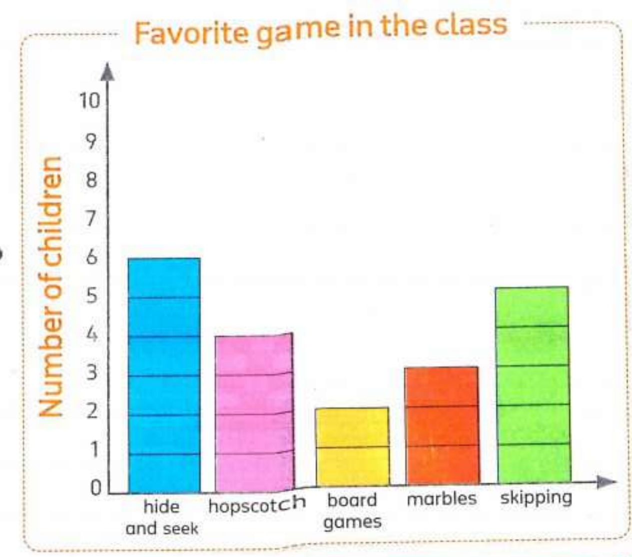
1 A bar graph شريط الرسم البيانى

A bar graph is a chart that uses bars [or columns] to show amounts.

الرسم البيانى الشريطى هو مخطط يستخدم أشرطة [أو أعمدة] لإظهار الكميات.

What is the favorite game in our class ?

hide and seek	6
hopscotch	4
board games	2
marbles	3
skipping	5

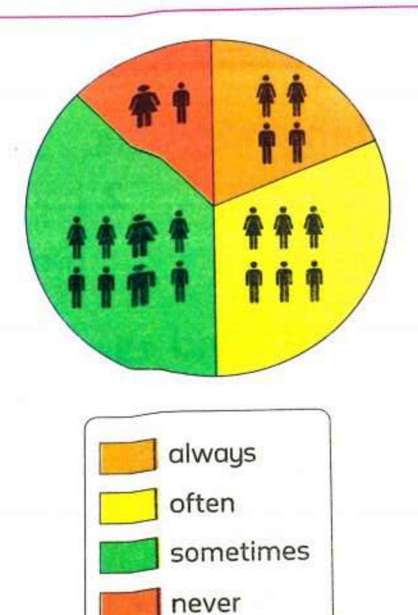


2 A pie chart

A pie chart is a type of graph that represents the data in the circular graph.

المخطط الدائرى هو نوع من الرسم البيانى يمثل البيانات فى الرسم البيانى الدائرى.

How often do children in our class play computer games on the weekend ?



General Exercises | on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. What you touch to make a machine work is called a ....
   a. stall b. button c. sail d. trunk
2. A .... is a place where you buy and sell things.
   a. school b. hospital c. park d. store
3. Elephants have long ....
   a. necks b. tails c. trunks d. horns

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sail - amazing - stall - train

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a (1) .... that sold toys made from wood and metal. A man showed him how a (2) .... moved. Ali thought the toys were (3) .... Ali's dad came to see the toys. He liked the train, so he bought it. Ali was very excited. Ali thanked his dad a lot.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. at - doing - homework – I – my - finished - 9 o'clock.

....

2. prefers - new - She – with - toys - playing.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. On weekends, I like .... (help) my mom in the kitchen.
2. Hala enjoys .... (play) with her dolls.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. hany really enjoys playing with marbles

....

2. does he enjoy reading adventure books

....

Lessons **4 & 5**

▸ Writing : A description of my favorite game
▸ Project

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

games console	وحدة تحكم فى الألعاب	bricks	طوب/كتلة مستطيلة
creative	مبدع	adventure	مغامرة
video game	لعبة فيديو	modern	حديث / عصرى

• Extra vocabulary

description	وصف	images	صور	great	عظيم / رائع
city	مدينة كبيرة	dice	مكعب النرد (الزهر)	however	مع ذلك
ludo	لعبة لودو	exciting	مشوق		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	build	يبنى	built
design	يصمم	designed	make	يصنع	made

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

an hour a day	ساعة فى اليوم	once a week	مرة فى الأسبوع
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	all kinds of	كل أنواع من

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Belal's favorite video game	play - games	Belal loves playing all kinds of games.
	board games	Belal plays board games with his sister.
	favorite	Belal's favorite games are video games.
	images - amazing	Some of the images in modern video games are amazing.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The video game .... is a small electronic device جهاز إلكترونى.
   a. board b. console c. brick d. city
2. Traveling to new places was an exciting ....
   a. subject b. meal c. adventure d. game
3. He used .... to build walls.
   a. bricks b. dice c. images d. counters

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

My favorite video game

by Belal

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

My favorite games are **video games**[1]. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be **creative**[2] and make something new.

Some of the images in **modern**[3] video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing **adventure**[4] games, where you can go to different places to find something important or **solve**[5] a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

[1] ألعاب ڤيديو
[2] مبدع
[3] حديث
[4] مغامرة
[5] يحل

لعبة القيديو المفضلة لدى

بقلم بلال

أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب فى الخارج مع أصدقائى، وفى المدرسة نلعب الحجلة وألعاب لوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختى، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمنى!

ألعابى المفضلة هى ألعاب القيديو. أنا لا ألعبهم كثيرًا، رغم ذلك. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. أنها ممتعة! ألعابى المفضلة هى تلك التى تقوم فيها ببناء المدن الكبيرة. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة حقًا باستخدام طوب مختلف. وبها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب هذه الألعاب حقًا لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

بعض الصور فى ألعاب القيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأشاركها مع أختى، إنها تستمتع بلعب ألعاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شىء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب القيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. فى الغالب يمكنك اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.

III Writing Skill

Tips to write a description about your favorite game.

Answering some questions can help you while writing about your favorite game description. إجابتك لبعض الأسئلة يمكن أن يساعدك في كتابة وصف لعبتك المفضلة.

- What is it called ? ماذا تسمى ؟
  - My favorite game is hopscotch.
- How do you play it ? كيف تلعبها ؟
  - We use different colored chalk to draw squares and we hop inside each square.
- How often do you play it ? كم مرة تلعبها ؟
  - I play hopscotch once a week after finishing my school.
- Who do you play with ? مع من تلعبها ؟
  - I enjoy playing hopscotch with my friends Amr and Ali, although Ali usually beats me.
- Why do you like it ? لماذا تحب هذه اللعبة ؟
  - I like it [because] [I like hopping] . (→ reason)
  - I [think] [playing hopscotch can keep me fit] . (→ opinion)

Note :

- We use because to introduce reasons.
- To express your opinion while writing a description use : **I think + your opinion.**

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

(05 min.)

▶ **Write a short description of your favorite board game of about 60-80 words.**

....

....

....

....

....

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Asser plays games .... with his friends.
   a. inside b. outside c. at home d. at school
2. Asser plays .... at school.
   a. chess b. video games c. football d. hopscotch
3. Asser plays board games with his ....
   a. brother b. sister c. cousin d. teacher
4. Asser's sister often .... him.
   a. beats b. hits c. fights d. asks

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. .... is a board game .
   a. Football b. Tennis c. Ludo d. Hopscotch
2. Video games are great when they are ....
   a. boring b. creative c. easy d. useless
3. Builders use .... to build houses.
   a. bricks b. images c. plastic d. plants

3 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

outside – animals – cities – hour

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play them for about an (1) .... on the weekend . My favorite video games are ones where I can build (2) .... I've made a really big city that has (3) .... and plants in it. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many different kinds of games. Some of them can be played outside like hide and seek and hopscotch. Other games are played inside like video games. The most **popular** indoor games are video games.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "..................".
   a. Reading b. Video games c. Sports d. Healthy habits
2. The underlined word "**popular**" means ....
   a. famous b. ugly c. boring d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who does the writer share the new games console with ?

....

4. When can video games be a problem ?

....

5. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. SB modern – are – Images – games – video – amazing – in.

....

2. great – to – It's – something – do – creative !

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I really love .... [make] important things.
2. They finished .... [do] their project about games .

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i prefer doing sports

....

2. what is your favorite game

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

"Pros and cons of video games" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- too much
- creative

....
....
....
....

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمات، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to **different** places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or **exciting**. You can often play with your friends, too.

1. The underlined word "**different**" is the opposite of ....
   a. unusual b. rare c. similar d. strange
2. The underlined word "**exciting**" in the text means ....
   a. weak b. boring c. interesting d. busy

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Elephants are the **largest** land animals. They live in Africa and Asia. They can be as **heavy** as a truck. Elephants have long trunks. They use their trunks to get food and drink water. Elephants love to eat leaves and grass. They have big ears.

1. The underlined word "**largest**" means ....
   a. smallest b. biggest c. shortest d. thinnest
2. The underlined word "**heavy**" is the opposite of ....
   a. light b. slow c. tiny d. easy

2 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◂ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

very / so ⟶ to strengthen an adjective — تستخدم [very / so] لتقوية الصفة

quite ⟶ to make the meaning of an adjective less strong — تستخدم [quite] لتقليل قوة الصفة

really ⟶ to strengthen a verb or an adjective — تستخدم [really] لتقوية الفعل او الصفة

at all ⟶ to strengthen negative sentences — تستخدم [at all] لتقوية الجملة المنفية

بعد هذه الافعال نستخدم الفعل مضاف له ing

[enjoy - stop - continue - like - prefer - finish - hate - imagine] + [inf. + ing]

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 I enjoy ...... [read] books at night.	reading	نستخدم [inf. + ing] بعد الفعل [enjoy]
2 I ...... [very] like English.	really	تستخدم [really] قبل الفعل
3 My father stopped ...... [smoke] last year.	smoking	لوجود الفعل [stop]
4 I don't like fish ...... [very].	at all	نستخدم [at all] في الجمل المنفية

Practice

▸ Write the reason. ◂ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 My sister prefers ...... [eat] chickens.	eating	....
2 Amira ...... [very] liked games.	really	....
3 There aren't any boys in the classroom ...... [quite] .	at all	....
4 I imagine ...... [fly] in a plane.	flying	....

▸ Write the correction. ◂ اكتب التصحيح.

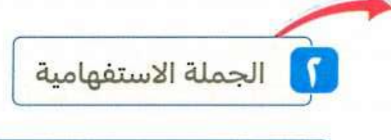
1 My friend ...... [so] loves chocolate.	....	نستخدم [really] لتقوية الفعل
2 I like ...... [swim] in the sea.	....	نستخدم [inf.+ing] بعد الفعل [like]
3 I think football is ...... [so] good, but I prefer tennis.	....	نستخدم [quite] لتقليل قوة الصفة
4 She hates ...... [play] basketball.	....	نستخدم [inf.+ing] بعد الفعل [hates]

3 Sentence Building

• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

1	my – loved – I – playing – figures – action – with.
2	rollerblades – didn't – I – have.
3	games – board – We – played.
4	enjoyed – I – bike – riding – my.
5	at all – didn't – skipping – He – like.
6	good – football – quite – at – I – was.
7	was – a – day – It – hot.
8	set – train – I – love – with – my – playing.
9	outside – play – We – games.
10	a – Video – be – can – problem – games.

1 فاعل	2 فعل	3 باقي الجملة .
I	had	a skateboard.
	can be	



1	ludo – How – you – do – play – often ?
2	with – do – play – Who – you ?
3	grandpa – Did – visit – you – your ?
4	find – What – you – did ?
5	games – board – Did – play – you ?

1 كلمة استفهام	2 فعل مساعد	3 فاعل	4 فعل	5 باقي السؤال ?
How	do	you	play	tennis ?

4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Your favorite video games

My favorite games are video games[1]. I don't play them very often, though[2]. I play for about an hour on the weekend[3]. My favorite games are ones where you build cities[4]. I've made a really big city using different bricks[5]. It has animals and plants in it, too[6]. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new[7].

2 Your favorite toy

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard[8]. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends[9]. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun[10]. We all wanted to go so fast[11]! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it[12]. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads[13]. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard[14]! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small[15]. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one[16].

3 Hide and seek game

Hide and seek is a fun game[17]. Most children love playing hide and seek[18]. They are very good at hiding[19]. They can hide for a very long time[20]. They can hide behind trees or under tables[21]. They play that game in the parks[22]. They need a large space to run and hide[23]. All the children hide and one of them tries to find them[24].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Toys and games

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

set - find – house – toys – made

Mazen : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Tamer ?

Tamer : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old (1) .... at her house, actually.

Mazen : What did you (2) .... in there ?

Tamer : There was an action figure. I loved playing with it!

Mazen : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I (3) .... up lots of games for them.

Tamer : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.

Mazen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's (4) ....

My Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I .... (very) liked playing with cuddly toys.
2. I didn't like train sets .... (on) all.
3. Does she enjoy .... (reads) stories ?
4. They finished .... (paint) posters today.

My Writing

3 Write an email of about 60 words about your favorite game to your friend Mai. Your name is Mona and your email address is mona@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mai@gmail.com.

From

To

Subject

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

My Project

4 Design and make a simple board game.

....

....

....

....

....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 8

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثامنة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

action figures	مجسمات (كرتونية)
doll's house	منزل دمية
train set	مجموعة لعبة القطار
rollerblades	حذاء تزحلق
beat	يهزم
skateboard	لوح تزلج
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية
stall	مقصورة (مكان لبيع السلع)
button	زر
hopscotch	لعبة الحجلة
trunk	خرطوم الفيل
sail	شراع
board game	لعبة لوحية

Pronunciation

Language

1 Intensifiers عبارات التوكيد

1. We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

١. نستخدم "عبارات التوكيد" لتقوية الصفات و الأفعال.

2. We use (really, very, so) to strengthen an adjective.

٢. نستخدم (really, very,so) لتقوية الصفة.

ex.: I was really / very / so good at hiding!

3. We can also use (really) to strengthen a verb.

٣. يمكن أن نستخدم أيضا (really) لتقوية الفعل.

ex.: I really liked playing hopscotch.

4. We can use (at all) to strengthen negative sentences.

٤. يمكن أن نستخدم (at all) بمعنى (على الاطلاق) لتقوية الجمل المنفية.

ex.: He didn't like skipping at all.

5. We can use (quite) to make the meaning of an adjective less strong.

٥. يمكن أن نستخدم (quite) بمعنى (إلى حد ما) لإضعاف قوة الصفة.

ex.: I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

2 Verbs followed by (inf. + ing)

(enjoy / stop / continue / finish / hate / imagine / like / prefer) + inf. + ing

ex.: Salma imagined flying in a plane over the city.

Test 3 on Unit 8

• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The .... was my favorite toy.
   a. train set b. skateboard c. board game d. ball
2. My skateboard was black, with orange and .... stickers.
   a. brown b. green c. blue d. yellow
3. I had to wear a helmet and .... pads.
   a. elbow b. knee c. neck d. head
4. Now, I have a .... skateboard.
   a. heavier b. bigger c. smaller d. cheaper

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. A "........................" is what you touch to make a machine work.
   a. trunk b. button c. sail d. stall
2. At school we use chalk to make a/an .... game.
   a. action b. hopscotch c. skateboard d. hide and seek
3. There are some wooden toys on the toy ....
   a. fruit b. button c. stall d. floor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stories – toys – house – imagination

Amira is a creative student. When she was little, she really liked games that used a lot of (1) .... She was very good at making up (2) .... She had a doll's house, some cuddly (3) ...., and some action figures. She also enjoyed playing outside. She liked playing volleyball with her friends. She was quite good at football, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Tarek. I live in Luxor. My father works with computers. He teaches me how to use computers. I like to play video games with my friends, but I like outdoor games most. My mother is a teacher. My parents never work on the weekend. We often go **outside**.

I like to play games with my cousins and my friends at the park. My favorite game is hide and seek. We run fast and try to hide. Sometimes, we draw squares to play hopscotch. My cousin, Amr is really good at skipping. It's very interesting, but it's difficult, too. You have to practice a lot. We really enjoy our time together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**outside**" is the opposite of ....
   a. lovely b. quickly c. fast d. inside
2. The writer's mother is a/an ....
   a. engineer b. teacher c. doctor d. vet

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the family do on the weekend ?
....
4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
....
5. What do they do to play hopscotch ?
....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. all – at – I – like – didn't – playing – football !
....
2. good at – is – My brother – really – seek – and – hide.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Do Asser and Adam enjoy .... (read) stories ?
2. Shaimaa .... (at all) enjoys playing hopscotch.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. ahmed is making up new games
....
2. how often do you play hopscotch
....

8 SB Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Eyad about a description of your favorite games. Your name is Maged and your email address is maged@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is eyad@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • video games • games console

From

To

Subject

....,
....
....
....
....

Test 4 on Unit 8

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Soha is .... years old.
   a. 9 b. 10 c. 11 d. 12
2. On the weekend, she visits her ....
   a. aunt b. sister c. uncle d. father
3. She found a box of her old ....
   a. books b. toys c. pens d. clothes
4. There was a train .... inside the box.
   a. set b. film c. flat d. figure

[المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤]

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Wearing pads protects our .... if we fall off the skateboard.
   a. knees b. ears c. mouths d. noses

[الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤]

2. My favorite .... is the train set.
   a. subject b. room c. toy d. box [سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤]
3. She always wears a .... when she rides her bike to protect her head.
   a. helmet b. sticker c. balloon d. belt

[الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٤]

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

train - toy - invent - board

I found a box of my old toys at my grandma's house. I was really happy to see my old cuddly (1) .... again. I played with my old (2) .... game. I wanted to have a go on my old rollerblades, but they were too small. My sister found her old doll's house. My favorite toy was a (3) .... set. But I couldn't find it.

[المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When we get together with our friends or family, we sometimes play party games. There are many party games. "Hide and seek" is my favorite. It's very exciting. All you need is a wide place to play **it**. One player, called the seeker tries to find the other players. The last one left is the winner.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The text is about "....................." .
   a. Food b. Friends c. Party games d. Toys
2. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to ....
   a. the seeker b. hide and seek c. hopscotch d. musical chairs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When do we play party games ?

....

4. What do we need to play hide and seek ?

....

5. Who is the winner in hide and seek ?

....

[الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤]

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. swimming – I – like - at all - don't. [القاهرة - الساحل ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. was - favorite – What – your - toy ? [المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤]

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. The lesson wasn't interesting .... [so]. [القليوبية - شرق شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤]
2. She loves .... [make] important things. [الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i could go fast on my skateboard [اسوان - دراو ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. who do you play hopscotch with [القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٤]

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Playing games"

Guiding elements :
- Is playing games good for us ?
- What do we learn from playing ?

....

....

.... [الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤]

Test for Al-Azhar students — On Unit 8

1 Read and complete the dialogue.

hide – favorite – skipping – games – interesting

Sara : Have you started your project about toys ?
Rana : Yes, it's really (1) ....
Sara : What (2) .... did you like playing when you were young ?
Rana : I thought (3) .... and seek was so fun!
Sara : Great! I was really good at hiding, too.
Rana : What was your (4) .... game ?
Sara : I liked (5) ...., but it was so difficult, too.
Rana : That's right.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word.

1. small – hide and seek – hopscotch – skipping [..................]
2. helped – enjoyed – beat – coughed [..................]
3. start – jump – dice – stop [..................]
4. strong – amazing – brilliant – skateboard [..................]
5. mom – dad – brother – sail [..................]

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. .... is a board game.
   a. Football b. Tennis c. Ludo d. Hopscotch
2. You can go quite fast on ....
   a. hopscotch b. skateboard
   c. train set d. board games
3. My brother is really good at .... and seek.
   a. cuddly b. action c. hide d. ride
4. There are some wooden toys on the toy ....
   a. bank b. stall c. steel d. sail
5. I .... my foot, so I had to go to the doctor.
   a. rode b. hurt c. skipped d. ate
6. I prefer .... books to watching TV.
   a. reading b. to read c. read d. reads
7. She doesn't like playing tennis ....
   a. quite b. really c. at all d. too
8. Hany enjoys .... with his toys.
   a. play b. plays c. played d. playing
9. Hala .... enjoys eating pizza.
   a. really b. quite c. very d. at all
10. The house is .... beautiful.
   a. at all b. quite c. quietly d. all

4 Reorder.

1. games - on - Children - play - like to - the sand.
....
2. was - My - toy - a train set - favorite.
....
3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting.
....
4. your - is - What - sister - at - good ?
....
5. games - skipping - Some - are - difficult - so.
....

5 Write an email of five sentences to your friend Mahmoud to tell him about your favorite game.

Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed2005@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mahmoud2007@hotmail.com.

Guiding elements :
• kinds • good at • video games • board games • favorite

From
To
Subject

.................................,
....
....

What's the story ?

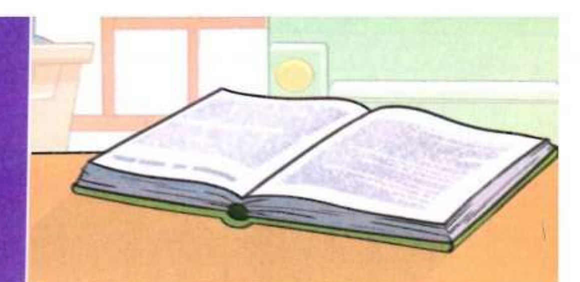
ما هى القصة [الحكاية] ؟

Aims of Unit Nine : الأهداف العامة للوحدة التاسعة :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
  - أستمع وأقرأ عن جحا وقصصه.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story
  - افهم واناقش ما يجعل القصة جيدة.
- use the past continuous.
  - استخدم الماضى المستمر.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
  - اكتب بداية ونهاية قصة قصيرة.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
  - استمع لقصة قصيرة عن ولد وذئب.
- use sequencing adverbs.
  - استخدم ظروف تتابع الأحداث.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
  - اتعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التى بها الصوت /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.
  - اشارك فى مشروع تعاونى لسرد القصص.

Lesson 1 ▸ Goha's stories



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

setting	مكان وزمان [أحداث القصة]	ending	النهاية	moral	المغزى [من القصة]
characters	شخصيات [رواية/فيلم]	narrator	راوى القصة	review	مقال نقدى

Extra vocabulary

Algeria	دولة الجزائر	both	كلاهما	market	سوق / متجر
Sudan	دولة السودان	countryside	الريف	details	تفاصيل
Morocco	دولة المغرب	son	ابن	difference	اختلاف
clever	ماهر / ذكى	journey	رحلة [طويلة]	tired	متعب
popular = known	مشهور / معروف	funny	فكاهى / مرح	donkey	حمار
story	قصة				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
pass	يمر / يعبر	passed	ride	يركب	rode
carve	ينحت	carved	say	يقول	said
happen	يحدث	happened	teach	يُعلم	taught
disagree	يرفض	disagreed	let	يدع / يسمح	let

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take turns	يتناوب / يتبادل الأدوار	[be] known by	معروف بـ
have a turn	يأخذ دور	in fact	فى الواقع / فى الحقيقة
right about	على حق بخصوص	take place in	تحدث فى
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	Me too. = So do I.	وانا ايضًا.

• Did you know ?

• People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians carved pictures to tell stories.

• لقد قام الناس برواية القصص لآلاف السنين وقام المصريون القدماء بنقش الصور ليسردوا القصص.

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف	
characters	the people or animals in a story	الأشخاص أو الحيوانات فى القصة
ending	the last part of a story	الجزء الأخير من القصة
setting	the time and place where a story happens	الزمان والمكان الذى تحدث فيه القصة
moral	the lesson you learn from a story	الدرس الذى تتعلمه من القصة
narrator	the person who tells the story	الشخص الذى يروى القصة

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Goha's stories	review - Goha	Lama is writing a review of one of Goha's stories.
	man - son	The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey.
	take turns - donkey	The man and his son take turns riding the donkey.
	journey - long	The journey to the market is long.
	funny - clever	Goha's stories are funny and clever.
	popular - world	Goha's stories are popular all over the world.

05 min. Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The time and place where a story happens is the ....
   a. setting b. sitting c. cycling d. transport
2. I read a .... of the new movie before deciding to watch it.
   a. review b. meal c. market d. character
3. The .... of the story is "Never be selfish".
   a. narrator b. setting c. brain d. moral
4. The .... is the person who tells you the story.
   a. narrator b. ending c. journey d. moral
5. The .... boy could answer all the questions right in ten minutes only.
   a. tired b. angry c. clever d. sad

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Why do the man and his son carry the donkey ? لماذا حمل الرجل وابنه الحمار؟

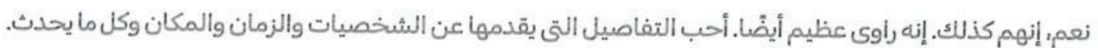
What are you doing, Lama ? ماذا تفعلين يا لاما ؟

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters - the man and his son - take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey !

أنا أكتب مقال نقدى لإحدى قصص جحا. القصة التى تدور حول رجل يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه وحمار. تدور أحداث القصة فى الريف، منذ سنوات عديدة. اثنان من الشخصيات - الرجل وابنه - يتناوبوا على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبى على الحمار، يقول الأشخاص الذين يمرون بجانبهم إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل على الحمار، يقولون أنه يجب أن يترك ابنه يأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون أن الحمار لابد أن يكون متعبًا. وفى نهاية القصة كلاهما يحمل الحمار!

Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they ? هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك ؟

Yes, they are. He's a great narrator, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.



نعم، إنهم كذلك. إنه راوى عظيم أيضًا. أحب التفاصيل التى يقدمها عن الشخصيات والزمان والمكان وكل ما يحدث.

So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

وأنا أيضًا. فى الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية فى جميع أنحاء العالم، لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، فى السودان، هو جاوا. وفى الجزائر اسمه جحا، وفى المغرب جَحا.

Are the stories the same in every country ?

هل القصص واحدة فى كل بلد؟

There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story ?
هناك بعض الاختلافات، لكن جميعها لديها مغزى يريد جحا أن يعلمنا إياها. ما هو المغزى من القصة من رأيك ؟

That you can't make everyone happy. أنك لا تستطيع أن تجعل الجميع سعداء.

I think Goha is right about that ! أعتقد أن جحا على حق فى ذلك !

Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though ! وأنا أيضًا. أنا سعيدة لأننى أعرف أى قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك !

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. In Morocco, what do they call Goha ?
- In Morocco, he's Jha.

Practice 2. What do people say when the man rides the donkey ?
....

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

• Information about the story

Characters	a man, his son, a donkey, and the people
Setting	the countryside - many years ago
Narrator	Goha
Ending	The man and his son carry the donkey.
Moral	You can't make everyone happy.

General Exercises | on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm writing a .... of one of Goha's stories.
   a. lesson b. review c. plan d. map
2. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his ....
   a. wife b. mother c. son d. daughter
3. The setting is the .... , many years ago.
   a. countryside b. city c. sea d. house
4. The journey is ....
   a. exciting b. dangerous c. easy d. long

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The farmer went to the .... to sell the grains.
   a. cinema b. house c. market d. museum
2. The .... is the last part of a story.
   a. setting b. title c. singing d. ending
3. The...................... gives you details about the characters in the story.
   a. narrator b. music c. moral d. country

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ending - black - faster - setting

I like reading stories. My favorite story is the hare and the tortoise. The (1) .... is the forest. The characters are the hare and the tortoise. One day, the hare asks the tortoise to make a race to know who is (2) .... In the (3) .... of the story, the tortoise wins the race. (القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٤)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Jack and his mother were very <u>**poor**</u>. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!" On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them ? They will make you rich!" said the man. Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans! "She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, mom, "said Jack. "I thought they would help us. "Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**poor**" is the opposite of ....
   a. angry b. rich c. giant d. slow

2. Jack and his mother wanted to sell their ....
   a. hen b. goat c. cow d. beans

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Jack meet the old man ?

....

4. How was Jack when he went to bed ?

....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. funny – person – He – and – is – a clever.

....

2. are – Goha's – very – stories – popular.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. goha's stories are my favorite

....

2. why doesn't she like skipping

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Your favorite story"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

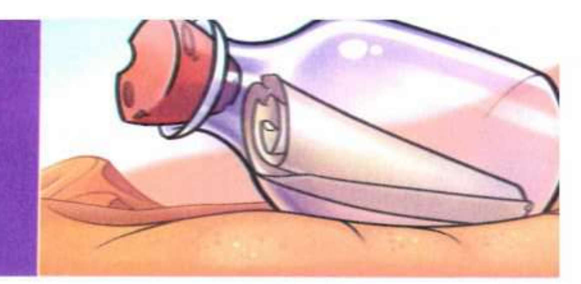
Guiding elements :

- characters
- setting

....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 2

▸ A message in a bottle
▸ Language Focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

message	رسالة	bottle	زجاجة
trash	قمامة / مهملات	event	حدث

Extra vocabulary

quiet	هادئ	space	الفضاء	computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر
journalist	صحفي	path	مسار / طريق	forest	غابة
beach	شاطئ	shining	مشرقة	weather	طقس
idea	فكرة	grandparents	أجداد	suddenly	فجأة
piece	قطعة	sand	رمال	lovely = beautiful	جميل
newspaper	جريدة	goal	هدف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed	swim	يسبح	swam
fold	يطوى / يثنى	folded	grow up	يكبر	grew up
wash	يغسل	washed	throw	يلقى / يرمى	threw
follow	يتبع	followed	ring	يرن	rang
score	يسجل (اهداف)	scored	forget	ينسى	forgot
email	يراسل	emailed	send	يرسل	sent
interrupt	يقاطع / يعارض	interrupted			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live by	يعيش بجوار	along the path	على طول المسار / الممر
on the sand	على الرمال	a bit scared	خائف بعض الشيء
in the distance	على بُعد	make notes	يدون ملاحظات

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A message in a bottle	live - by the sea	Tom's grandparents lived by the sea.
	quiet - beautiful	The beach near Tom's grandparents was quiet and beautiful.
	bottle - water	Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.
	write - message	Granddad wanted Tom to write a message in the bottle.
	wash - give	Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper.
	throw - bottle	Tom threw the bottle with the message into the sea.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I sent a .... to my friend, but he didn't read it.
   a. bottle b. box c. message d. path
2. I throw the .... in the trash can.
   a. trash b. water c. path d. wall
3. My grandparents .... by the sea.
   a. call b. live c. ask d. see

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
• تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read the beginning of a story. استمع واقرأ بداية القصة.

A message in a bottle

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

"What's a message in a bottle ?"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find".

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

"What are you doing, Tom ?" asked Grandma.

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it ?"

رسالة فى زجاجة.

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. لقد سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال.

فى أحد الأيام، كانوا يسبحون فى البحر عندما رأى توم زجاجة زجاجية فى الماء. قال : "انظر يا جدى". "دعنا نضعها فى سلة المهملات".

قال الجد : "لدى فكرة أفضل. دعنا نكتب رسالة فى زجاجة." "ما هى الرسالة فى الزجاجة ؟"

"نكتب رسالة على قطعة من الورق، ثم تطوى الورقة وتضعها فى الزجاجة، ثم ترمى الزجاجة فى البحر ليجدها شخص آخر".

عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وقطعة من الورق. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

سألت الجدة "ماذا تفعل يا توم ؟".

أجاب توم : "أنا أكتب رسالة فى زجاجة". "هل تريدين قراءتها ؟"

Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.

What are your favorite things ? Please email back to tell me! My email address is tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom

مرحبًا !

اسمى توم. عمرى ١١ سنة وأنا من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. الأشياء المفضلة لدى هى الفضاء والحيوانات واللون الأزرق.

ما هى الأشياء المفضلة لديك ؟ برجاء راسلنى مرة أخرى لتخبرنى! بريدى الإلكترونى هو tom@beachnet.usa

من توم

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

وفى اليوم التالى، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة فى البحر.

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم، لقد نسى هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة فى الزجاجة. ثم فى أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة....

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What are Tom's favorite things ?

- Tom's favorite things are space, animals and the color blue.

Practice 2. What did Tom see while he was swimming ?

....

Read and learn. اقرأ و تعلم.

After reading, note the following.

The characters are ——→ Tom, Tom's grandparents

The setting is ——→ the beach

The first important event is ——→ Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.

Note :

▸ To write a beginning of a story, think about the characters, narrator, setting and first important event.

لكتابة بداية القصة، فكر في الشخصيات، الراوي، المكان والزمان والحدث المهم الأول.

Example A beginning of another story

Listen and read. استمع و اقرأ.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .

كنت أنا وصديقي على نلعب في الغابة بالأمس. لقد كانت فترة ما بعد الظهر جميلة وكانت الشمس مشرقة. كنا بالقرب من منزلي وكنا نأمل أن نرى بعض الحيوانات والطيور المثيرة للاهتمام. كنا نسير على طول الطريق عندما رأينا فجأة منزلًا صغيرًا على مسافة. قال علي : "هيا نذهب ونلقي نظرة داخل المنزل : كنت خائفًا بعض الشيء ولم أرغب في الذهاب، لكنني تبعته. وبالقرب من المنزل كان هناك ... .

III Language Focus

1 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Usage : الاستخدام

▸ We use the past continuous in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

◂ نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + inf. + ing

We / You / They / اسم جمع + were + inf. + ing

▸ ex.: Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

---

2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't + inf. + ing

We / You / They / اسم جمع + weren't + inf. + ing

▸ ex.: They weren't watching the match on TV at 9 o'clock yesterday.

3 **Yes/No Question** السؤال بـ "هل"

Was + he / she / it / I / اسم مفرد + inf. + ing .... ?
Were + you / we / they / اسم جمع + inf. + ing .... ?

▸ **ex.:** Was she reading a story at 3 pm yesterday ?

- Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.

Question word + $\frac{\text{was}}{\text{were}}$ + subject + inf. + ing .... ?

▸ **ex.:** - What were you doing at 5 pm yesterday?
- I was playing tennis at 5 pm yesterday.

Key words الكلمات الدالة على الزمن

at that moment yesterday / at [time] yesterday / all the [day] yesterday

ex.: He was doing his homework at 7:00 yesterday.

2 When عندما

Usage : الاستخدام

▸ We can use the past continuous with when and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.

◂ يمكن أن نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط [past simple] بعد [When] ثم يتبعه زمن الماضى المستمر [past continuous] لنوضح أن حدثًا قطع حدث آخر فى الماضى.

When + past simple , past continuous

ex.: When they found a note, they were playing in the park.

◂ يسبق زمن الماضى المستمر [when] إذا كانت فى منتصف الجملة ثم يتبعها زمن الماضى البسيط.

Past continuous + when + past simple

ex.: I was reading a book when my dad came home.

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He was .... (read) a story when his father came. (القاهرة - الوايلى ٢٠٢٤)
2. I wasn't .... (watch) TV when you called me. (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)
3. Mom .... (clean) the house when my aunt visited us.
4. At 7 pm yesterday, I .... (do) my homework.
5. They .... (swim) in the sea at 5 pm yesterday evening.
6. Maged and I were playing computer games when his dad .... (arrive) home.
7. She was doing her homework when the lights .... (go) off.
8. What .... (was) you doing at 8 am yesterday ?
9. I was walking home when I .... (see) my cousin.
10. Yesterday afternoon, Tamer and Ali .... (not play) tennis.
11. It .... (rain) all afternoon yesterday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. Omar and Ali .... going to the library at 5 pm yesterday.
   a. are b. is c. was d. were
2. She was .... her homework when her dad came home.
   a. do b. does c. doing d. did
3. We were watching the match .... the doorbell rang.
   a. who b. when c. what d. where
4. When we saw Hany, we were .... in the street.
   a. walks b. walk c. walking d. walked
5. What were you .... at 7 pm yesterday ?
   a. do b. doing c. does d. did
6. When the teacher .... into the class, the students were making noise.
   a. coming b. came c. comes d. is coming
7. What were you doing when I .... you ?
   a. phone b. phones c. phoning d. phoned

General Exercises | on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They went to the beach to swim and .... on the waves.
   a. walk   b. surf   c. dive   d. fly
2. Where is your .... of water ?
   a. bowl   b. pan   c. plate   d. bottle
3. My dad is a/an .... He works for a newspaper.
   a. engineer   b. carpenter   c. journalist   d. vet

2 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

scared – sun – moon – interesting

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the (1) .... was shining. We were hoping to see some (2) .... animals and birds. When we were walking a long the path, we saw a strange house in the distance. Ali decided to go into the house. I was a bit (3) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was <u>**quiet**</u> and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."
"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."
"What's a message in a bottle ?" Tom asked.
"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find." Granddad replied.
The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom loved to go to the .... with his grandparents.
   a. museum   b. beach   c. town   d. park
2. The opposite of the underlined word "<u>**quiet**</u>" is "..................".
   a. noisy   b. far   c. near   d. beautiful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Tom's grandparents live ?

....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

5. What did Tom find in the bottle ?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are – favorite – What – things – your ?

....

2. games – on – Children – the sand – play – like to .

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He .... (reading) when his dad called him.
2. They were .... (play) football yesterday evening.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. yesterday, I was on the beach near my house

....

2. my favorite things are space, animals, and running

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"A day on the beach"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- Who were you with ?
- What were you doing ?

....

....

....

....

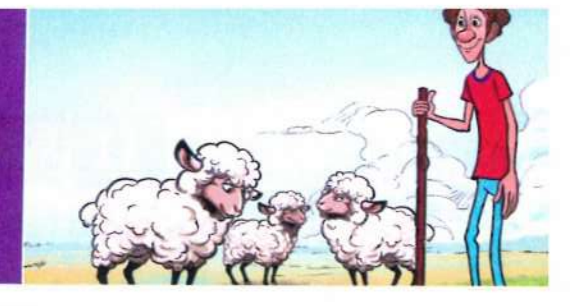
....

....

....

Lesson 3

- The boy who cried wolf
- Language Focus
- Pronunciation



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

sheep	اغنام / خِراف	villager	قروى / مزارع	main	اساسى / رئيسى
shepherd	راعى الغنم	wolf	ذئب	angry	غاضب
lonely	وحيدًا	bored	يشعر بملل	recipe	وصفة

Extra vocabulary

scared	خائف	yogurt	زبادى	truth	حقيقة
real	حقيقى	again	مرة اخرى	untrue	غير حقيقى
sorry	اسف / حزين	mint	نعناع	bowl	وعاء
joke	نكته/فكاهة	pieces	قطع	hill	تل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
annoy	يزعج / يضايق	annoyed	plan	يخطط	planned
waste	يهدر	wasted	kill	يقتل	killed
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	believed	appear	يظهر	appeared
shout	يصرخ	shouted	reach	يصل	reached
save	ينقذ	saved	rest	يستريح	rested

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

angry with	غاضب من	tell stories	يروى قصص
at the end	فى النهاية	look after	يعتنى بـ
It's fun to	من الممتع أن...	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Don't tell .... stories.
   a. true   b. untrue   c. real   d. nice
2. A/An .... is a person who looks after sheep.
   a. shepherd   b. teacher   c. dentist   d. engineer
3. The .... is a very dangerous animal.
   a. dog   b. wolf   c. cat   d. rabbit

II Listening and Reading

Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

AudioScript

The boy who cried wolf

The beginning

Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village[1]. He worked alone as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day he took the sheep up the hill[2] and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.
One day, Peter was lying[3] on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely[4] and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted "Wolf[5]! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below. Next, he laid down and waited. The villagers[6] were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

[1] قرية
[2] تل
[3] مستلقى
[4] وحيد
[5] ذئب
[6] قرويين
[7] غاضب
[8] مشغول
[9] خائف

ذات يوم كان هناك ولد يُدعى بيتر و كان يعيش فى قرية. فقد كان يعمل وحده كراعيًا يعتنى بالخراف. فكل يوم كان يأخذ الغنم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الغنم العشب اللذيذ. وذات يوم كان بيتر مستلقيًا على العشب يراقب خرافه. شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر أن يستمتع. فى البداية، صرخ "ذئب! هناك ذئب! إلى القرويين في الحقل بالأسفل. ثم استلقى وانتظر. كان القرويين مشغولين بالعمل، لكنهم كانوا قلقين بشأن أغنام بيتر، لذا وضعوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذهم.

The middle

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. "There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said. "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل يشعرون بالحر والتعب. لقد رأوا بيتر. كان مستلقيًا تحت شجرة وكان يضحك. قال بيتر"لا يوجد ذئب!" لقد كانت مزحة! "كان القرويون غاضبين جدًا وقالوا "بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة!" بعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى العمل.

The end

Then, Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry[7]. "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy[8]!" they said. Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared[9] and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

ثم فعل بيتر الأمر نفسه مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين جدًا. وقالوا "بيتر، لا يجب أن تضيع وقتنا! فنحن مشغولون جدًا!" وأخيرًا، فى اليوم الأخير من الإسبوع، كان بيتر مع خرافه فى أعلى قمة التل عندما ظهر فجأة ذئب حقيقى. كان بيتر خائفًا جدًا وتسلق شجرة. ظل ينادى وينادى طالبًا من شخص ما أن يساعده ولكن لم يصل أحد. قتل الذئب الغنم وأكلهم. فهم بيتر سبب عدم مجئ أحد وكان يشعر بالأسف الشديد.

The moral of the story

If you tell untrue stories many times, no one will believe you.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Salatet Zabadee recipe وصفة سلطة الزبادي

1. First, take a cucumber[1] and cut it in pieces.

١. أولًا، خذ خيارة وقطعها قطع.

2. Next, mix[2] the yogurt[3] and mint in a bowl[4].

٢. ثم، اخلط الزبادى والنعناع فى وعاء.

3. After that, add[5] some garlic[6] and salt[7] if you like.

٣. بعد ذلك، أضف بعض من الثوم والملح إذا أردت.

4. Finally, take it to the table for everyone to enjoy!

٤. أخيرًا، خذها إلى المنضدة ليستمتع بها الجميع !

[1] خيار
[2] يخلط
[3] زبادى
[4] وعاء عميق
[5] يضيف
[6] ثوم
[7] ملح

III Language Focus

Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

Usage : الاستخدام

- We use **sequencing adverbs** to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.
  First الأول / أولاً ...... Next التالى ...... Then ثم ...... After that بعد ذلك ...... Finally أخيرًا ......

- نستخدم ظروف التسلسل والتتابع للإخبار عن متى تحدث الأشياء. فهى تساعدنا على فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل متابعة النص أسهل.

Steps for writing a story using sequencing words

- **First** : plan your story, and decide what it will be about.
  أولاً : خطط لقصتك وقرر عما سوف تكون
- **Next** : write a first draft of your story.
  ثم : اكتب مسودة لقصتك
- **Then** : check and correct your spelling and grammar.
  بعد ذلك : راجع وصحح الهجاء والقواعد الخاصة بك
- **Finally** : share it with friends and enjoy!
  فى النهاية : شاركها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع !

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▶ SB Number the story in the correct order. Then complete with the adverbs of sequencing from the box.

After that – Finally – First – Next – Then

a. .... , he shouted "Wolf" ! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. ☐
b. .... , a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry. ☐
c. .... , he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. ☐
d. Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. ☐
e. .... , Peter did it again. ☐
f. .... , the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. ☐

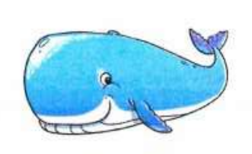
IV Pronunciation

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

▶ These words start with the sound /w/.

water ماء

wolf ذئب


whale حوت

whisper يهمس

w → /w/					
when	متى	went	ذهب	white	لون أبيض
wave	موجة	walk	يمشى / يسير	where	اين
west	غرب	what	ماذا		

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the word you hear.

1. white / what
2. wolf / when
3. wave / walk
4. west / whale

2 Listen and complete the words with (w) or (wh).

1. A __ ite _ _ ale _ ent _ est.
2. A _ olf __ ispered, " _ _at ? _ _en?"

3 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. what - when - whale - daughter
2. wolf - drought - walk - wave

Stressed syllable :

المقطع المشدد عليه عند النطق :

is a stressed part of a word or phrase. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.

هى جزء من كلمة أو عبارة يتم نطقها بشكل أقوى من باق أجزاء الكلمة.

- When a word has a **prefix**, the prefix usually isn't stressed.

عندما تحتوى الكلمة على البادئة، فإن البادئة عادة لا تكون مشدده.

ex.: resend "re" isn't stressed

- If the base word has **one syllable**, the stress is on the base word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية مكونة من مقطع واحد، يكون التشديد على الكلمة الأساسية.

ex.: dislike "like" is a stressed syllable

Look and identify the stressed syllable.

dislike	يكره	replay	يعيد تشغيل	incorrect	غير صحيح
indoors	فى الداخل	untidy	غير مرتب	disagree	يعارض / لا يوافق

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

1.

Let's resend the message.

2.

Why do you dislike surfing ?

3.

I like playing indoors.

4.

He was unhappy.

Look, read and circle the stressed syllable.

1.

1 + 1 = 3

This answer is incorrect.

2.

Why do you disagree with him ?

3.

The room is untidy.

4.

Please replay the video.

General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I want to make ....
   a. tea with milk b. salatet zabadee
   c. hot chocolate d. molokhia
2. I take the recipe from my ....
   a. grandma b. grandpa c. mom d. dad
3. I mix the .... and mint in a bowl.
   a. sugar b. soup c. yogurt d. tea
4. I add some garlic and .... if I like.
   a. salt b. sugar c. coffee d. mint

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He told a funny .... that made everyone in the room laugh.
   a. injury b. accident c. joke d. illness
2. The traveler got lost and felt .... in the desert.
   a. lonely b. happily c. carefully d. easily
3. This story is .... No one believes it.
   a. right b. correct c. true d. untrue

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

games – house – bus – air

My name is Mona. I visited my aunt yesterday. I went there by (1) .... It was hot, so I had a bottle of water. My aunt's (2) .... is near the sea. I had lunch with my cousin. We played computer (3) .... We had a lot of fun. I'm going to visit my grandfather next Monday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a shepherd boy who used to look after the sheep. He took them to the hill, so they could eat grass and drink fresh water. He was very bored as he had nothing to do. One day, he had an idea, he shouted "Wolf! Wolf!" The villagers came running with their sticks to help, but there wasn't any wolf. They were **annoyed** when they knew he wasn't telling the truth. He did this a few times. But one day, he saw a wolf. When he shouted " Wolf! Wolf!", no one came to help him. The wolf ate many sheep.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The shepherd boy took the sheep to the ....
   a. forest　　b. hill　　c. lake　　d. river

2. The underlined word "**annoyed**" means ....
   a. angry　　b. happy　　c. cold　　d. tired

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why were the villagers annoyed ?

....

4. Why was the shepherd boy bored ?

....

5. Who came running to help the shepherd boy ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. character – in – is – the story – Who – the main ?

....

2. the – well – First, – instructions – read.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. What .... [are] you doing yesterday evening ?
2. Was he .... [look] after the sheep ?

7 Punctuate the following.

1. First listen to the story carefully

....

2. why do you dislike video games

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

"A story about the boy who cried wolf" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • some fun　　• villagers

....
....
....
....
....

Lessons **4&5**

▸ Writing : The ending of a story
▸ Project

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

coast	ساحل	sailing	إبحار	excited	متحمس

• Extra vocabulary

underneath	تحت / أسفل	France	دولة فرنسا	vote	يجرى تصويت
illustrations	رسوم توضيحية	completed	مكتمل	display	يعرض / عرض

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
travel	يسافر	traveled	read	يقرأ	read
sail	يبحر بالقارب	sailed	forget	ينسى	forgot

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

decide to	يقرر أن	Let's + inf.	هيا....
a really long way	طريق طويل للغاية	by plane	بواسطة الطائرة
with best wishes	مع أطيب التمنيات	How far .... ?	كم المسافة .... ؟
That's a great idea.	هذه فكرة عظيمة.	reply to	رد لـ
grow up	يكبر / ينمو		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tom's message	reply to - bottle	Tom had a reply to the message in the bottle.
	man - message	A man in France found the message.
	excited	Tom was very excited.
	traveled - long	The message traveled a long way.
	visit	Granddad and Tom are going to visit Hugo.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I see a boat .... on the sea.
   a. sailing b. writing c. reading d. sleeping
2. My friend sent me a message and I sent him a ....
   a. reply b. meal c. coast d. visit
3. They .... to Alexandria every summer.
   a. annoy b. believe c. travel d. love

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

What does Tom decide to do ? ماذا قرر توم أن يفعل ؟

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the **message**[1] in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم. لقد نسى هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة فى الزجاجة. ثم فى أحد الأيام كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة.

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house. "A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

توم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتك فى زجاجة!

فى نهاية هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده.

قال الجد : "عثر رجل فى فرنسا على الرسالة. انظر، هذا هو رده".

From : Hugo
To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the **coast**[2] and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water–your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your **favorite**[3] things. My favorite things are my boat,

[1] رسالة
[2] ساحل
[3] مفضل

mangoes, and the color green.
You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!
With best wishes,
Hugo

مرحبًا توم،
اسمى هوجو وأعيش فى "Biarritz"، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربى. فى الأسبوع الماضى، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئًا ما فى الماء - رسالتك فى زجاجة! وهذا يعنى أنها قطعت أكثر من ٦٠٠٠ كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. أشيائى المفضلة هى القارب والمانجو واللون الأخضر. أنت مرحب بك جدًا للحضور لزيارتى فى فرنسا يومًا ما!
مع أطيب الأمنيات
هوجو

Tom was very **excited**[4]. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!" Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.
"What are you doing, Tom?"
"I'm writing to Hugo."
"Why, are you going to visit him?"
"You and I are both going to visit him!"
"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

[4] متحمس

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. "رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا طريقًا طويلًا حقًا"! فى وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده إلى الغرفة.
"ماذا تفعل يا توم؟" "أنا أكتب إلى هوجو".
"لماذا، هل ستزوره؟"
"أنا وأنت سنزوره"!
ضحك الجد: "إنها فكرة رائعة. لكن الطريق طويل، فلنذهب بالطائرة!"

III Writing Skill

Tip : A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.

تخبرك النهاية الجيدة بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به فى نهاية القصة.

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Write another ending to Tom's story :

....

....

....

....

....

....

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My friend sent a .... to my message.
   a. bottle b. weekend c. reply d. classroom
2. They like .... their boat on the River Nile.
   a. selling b. sailing c. swimming d. diving
3. When he .... up, he worked as a doctor.
   a. grew b. climbed c. gave d. picked

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

house – bottle – coast – boat

My name is Fares. I am twenty years old. I live in Port Said. My house is near the [1] .... of the sea. I love sailing my [2] .... Last week, I was sailing my boat when I saw something in the water. It was a message in a glass [3] ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does – do – What – decide – Tom – to ?

....

2. things – swimming – My favorite – sailing – are – and.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Were you .... (study) for the exam when I called you ?
2. He .... (is) traveling to the city when he met his friends.

5 Punctuate the following.

1. How did tom feel

....

2. i'm writing a message to Salah

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخراج بعض المعلومات الواردة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة بشكل مباشر وإذا واجهتك صعوبة، اقرأ النص جيدًا.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

The High Dam in Aswan helps the people a lot. Its reservoir is very big. It helps the farmers to grow crops which need a lot of water, like rice and sugarcane. It controls flooding. It helps with drought because it stores water. It provides clean energy so it protects the environment. It brings many good things to Egypt.

شرح الحل

تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتفهم التفاصيل الواردة.

1. Why is the High Dam important ?
   - Because it controls flooding.
2. How does the High Dam protect the environment ?
   - It provides clean energy so it protects the environment.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school. In China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

1. Why is air pollution very dangerous ?

   ....

2. How can people stop air pollution in London ?

   ....

II Language

Unit 7 — 1 Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Statements	Subj.	+	inf. / [inf. + s / es / ies] don't / doesn't + inf.	• I go to school early.

2 Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Statements	Subj.	+	am/is/are + inf. + ing.	• He is playing volleyball.

3 Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Statements	Subj.	+	التصريف الثانى للفعل didn't + inf.	• We didn't visit our grandparents.

4 Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Statements	Subj.	+	have / has haven't / hasn't + p.p.	• He has climbed the mountain.

Unit 8 — Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable	There are two cups of tea.	- الاسم المفرد الذى يعد يسبق بأداة نكرة. - الاسماء التى تعد لها مفرد وجمع.
Uncountable	There is some water.	- الاسم الذى لا يعد لا يسبق بأداة نكرة. - الاسماء التى لا تعد ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

Unit 9 — 1 If (Zero Conditional)

If + present simple, present simple

If you freeze water, it becomes ice.

2 must / mustn't

must	mustn't
Subj. + must + inf.	Subj. + mustn't + inf.
You must respect your teachers.	You mustn't play soccer in the hospital.

III Important paragraphs

Unit 7 — 1 Your family

teenager - big family - nephew

I'm Nour. I'm 12 years old. I'm a teenager. I have a big family. I have lots of cousins. I like to see my family. I have a nephew and a niece. I visit my grandparents every week.

2 Twins

siblings - identical - two sisters

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. They can be identical or non-identical. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers.

Unit 8 — 3 At the museum

jewelry - artifacts - interesting

Today we're at the museum. We'll visit a room with lots of jewelry first. After that, we'll see some clay artifacts. It's very interesting.

Unit 9 — 4 At the hospital

fell off - skateboard - wear a cast

Omar fell off his skateboard at the club. He broke his leg. His father took him to the hospital. The doctor said he had to wear a cast for 3 weeks.

5 Medicine in the past

herbs - burns - honey

Ancient Egyptians used some plants as a medicine. They used herbs to treat some diseases. Aloe can help with burns. They also used honey to treat infections.

Sample Test on Units 7,8&9

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. gl _ _ | 2. J _ n _ | 3. sculp _ _ _ _ | 4. wr _ t _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stethoscope – measure – mask – dress – medicine

This is the doctor's bag. He can use the [1] .... to listen to a patient's heart. He can [2] .... blood pressure using the blood pressure monitor. He should always wear a face [3] .... when he does an operation. He can put [4] .... in a patient's body with a syringe.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Plants with flowers produce pollen grains. These are very small structures. Insects, birds, or the wind carry pollen grains to other plants. When they are taken to another plant of the same type, the pollen grains mix with cells in the new plant to make seeds. When seeds fall to the ground, they can grow into a new plant. This new plant will inherit traits from both the parent plants.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Pollen grains are very .... structures.
   a. small b. big c. large
2. The pollen grains mix with cells in the new plant to make ....
   a. wood b. seeds c. paper

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do plants with flowers produce ?

....

4. How do insects and birds help flowering plants ?

....

5. What happens when seeds fall to the ground ?

....

6. What will the new plant inherit ?

....

4 The Reader.

The beginning & middle

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma didn't know •	☐ a. a frame for the car.
2. Laila and Nesma made •	☐ b. in science lessons.
	☐ c. what to make for the competition.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Laila looked at books and websites for ideas. ☐
2. Nesma's mom wants to be an inventor. ☐

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Last month, we .... to Aswan.
   a. travel b. traveled c. traveling
2. How .... wood is there ? - There's a lot of wood.
   a. much b. many c. old
3. You must .... your medicine on time.
   a. take b. taking c. took
4. There isn't .... sugar in the kitchen.
   a. some b. any c. a

6 Read, order and write.

1. making - of - I'm - three - cups - clay.

....

2. can - with - Aloe - help - burns.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Adaptation in animals

Guiding elements :

- seeds
- predators
- survive

....

....

....

....

....

....

THEME 4

Communication

UNIT 10

We love adventure !

نحن نحب المغامرة !

• Unit Ten Objectives

▶ Lessons 1&2

Objectives

• Understand and talk about magnets and poles

• يفهم ويتحدث عن المغناطيسات والأقطاب

Vocabulary

• attract, compass, magnet, needle

• يتجاذب، بوصلة، مغناطيس، ابره

▶ Lesson 3

Objectives

• Use the first conditional "If" to make predictions

• يستخدم الحالة الأولى "If" للتعبير عن التنبؤات

Vocabulary

• metal board, pick up, stick

• لوح معدنى، يلتقط، يلصق

Language

• If you watch this video, you'll learn about magnets.

• إذا شاهدت هذا الڤيديو سوف تتعلم عن المغناطيسات.

▶ Lesson 4

Objectives

• Understand different types of motion

• يفهم أنواع مختلفة من الحركة

Vocabulary

balance, drop, land

• توازن، يلقى/يسقط، يابسة

▶ Lessons 5 & 6

Objectives

• Learn about contact forces

• يتعلم عن قوى التلامس

Vocabulary

• door handle, force, friction

• مقبض الباب، قوة، احتكاك

▶ Lessons 7, 8 & 9

Objectives

• To recognize and produce the sound g as j

• يتعرف وينطق صوت g مثل j

Vocabulary

• change, danger, energy, giraffe, village, ground, smooth, ramp

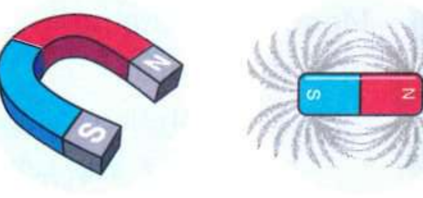
• يغير ، خطر ، طاقة ، زرافة ، قرية، أرض، ناعم، منحدر

Lessons 1&2

• Let's learn about words
• Reading : How to find directions

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



needle إبرة	poles أقطاب المغناطيس	compass بوصلة	magnet مغناطيس	magnetic field مجال مغناطيسى

Extra vocabulary

metal	معدن	direction	اتجاه
adventure	مغامرة	path	طريق / مسار
map	خريطة	useful	مفيد
way	طريق/اتجاه	arrow	سهم
piece	قطعة / جزء	situation	موقف
invisible	غير مرئى	desert	صحراء
area	منطقة / مساحة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
repel	يتنافر	repelled
attract	يجذب	attracted
pull	يتجاذب	pulled
navigate	ينتقل	navigated

Irregular

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
say	يقول	said
hide	يختبئ	hid
read	يقرأ	read

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• Let's + inf.	هيا	• look for	يبحث عن
• close to	بالقرب من	• push away	يتباعد / يتنافر
• in the north	فى الشمال	• point to	يشير إلى

II Listening and Speaking

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة ودعه/دعها يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.

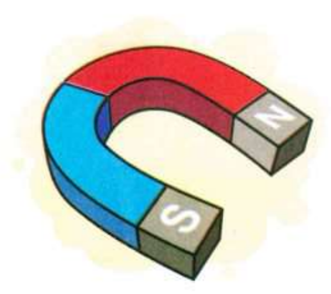
III Listening and Reading

- **Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.

Magnets

A **magnet**[1] is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other **metals**[2]. Magnets have a north pole and a south **pole**[3].
When the north pole of one magnet is close to the south pole of another magnet, they **attract**[4].
The north pole of a magnet repels the north pole of another magnet, and the south pole of a magnet repels the south pole of another magnet.
A magnetic field is an area around a magnet, which can pull objects towards it. We can't see this - it is **invisible**[5].
A compass can help you navigate. The needle in a compass is a magnet. It always points to the north.



[1] مغناطيس
[2] معادن
[3] قطب
[4] يجذب
[5] غير مرئى

المغناطيس هو قطعة من المعدن يمكنها جذب أو طرد بعض المعادن الأخرى. المغناطيس له قطب شمالى وقطب جنوبى. عندما يكون القطب الشمالى للمغناطيس قريبًا من القطب الجنوبى لمغناطيس آخر، فإنهم ينجذبون. يتنافر القطب الشمالى للمغناطيس مع القطب الشمالى لمغناطيس آخر، و هكذا القطب الجنوبى للمغناطيس يتنافر مع القطب الجنوبى لمغناطيس آخر. المجال المغناطيسى هو منطقة حول المغناطيس يمكن أن تسحب الأشياء نحوه. لا يمكننا رؤية هذا- إنه غير مرئى. يمكن أن تساعدك البوصلة على التنقل. الإبرة فى البوصلة هى مغناطيس. يشير دائمًا إلى الاتجاه الشمالى.

- **Look, listen and read.**

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

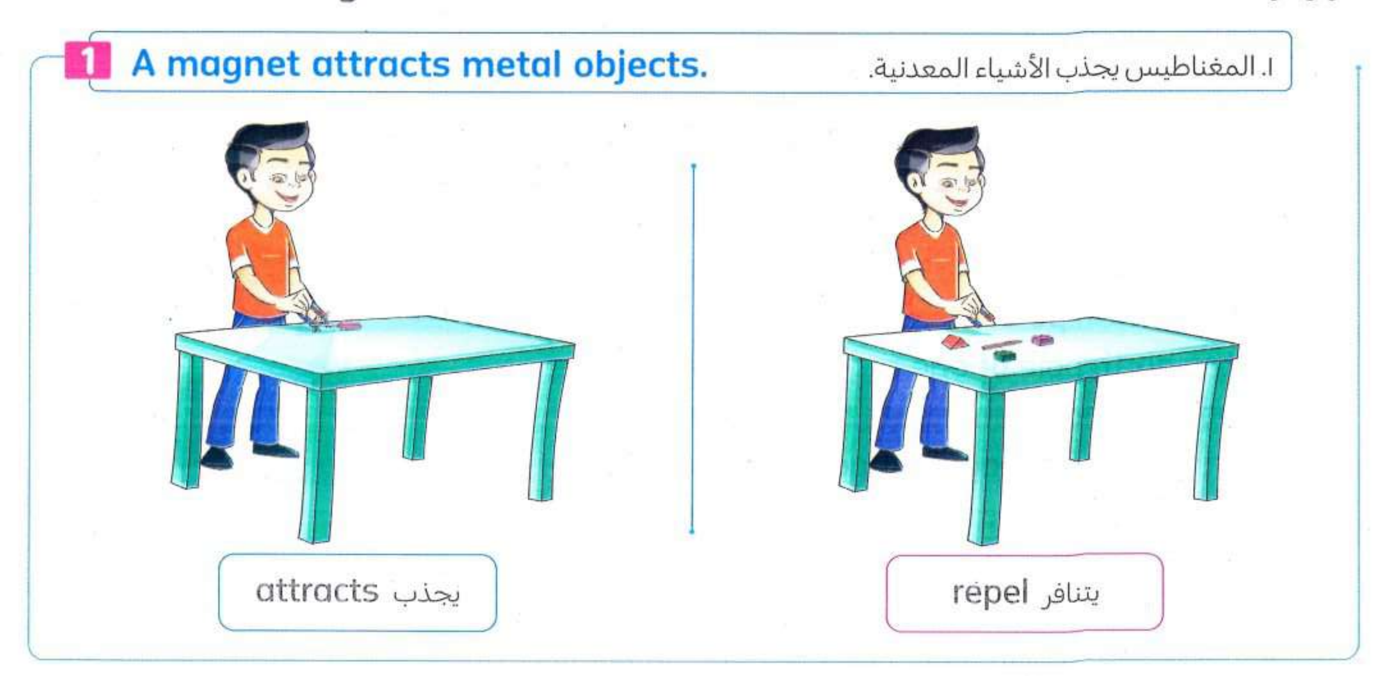
How to find directions

A compass can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic needle, which will point to the magnetic North Pole.
A map always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you read a map to show you where to go.

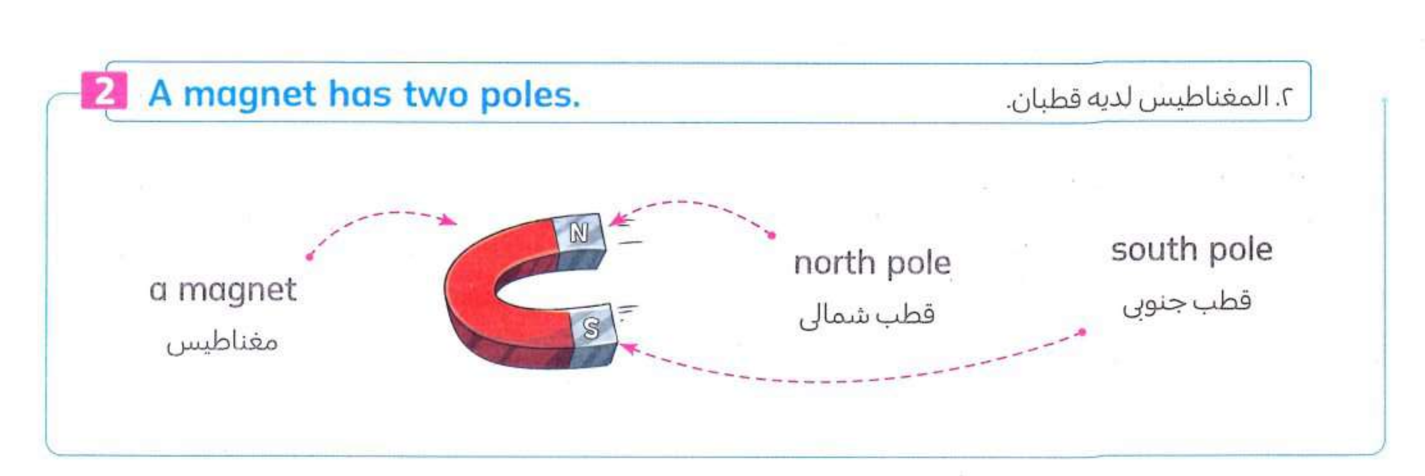
- يمكن للبوصلة أن توضح لك الاتجاه الشمالى. تحتوى على إبرة مغناطيسية تشير إلى القطب الشمالى المغناطيسى. تحتوى الخريطة دائمًا على سهم يوضح اتجاه الشمال. يمكنك استخدام هذا عندما تقرأ خريطة لتوضح لك إلى أين تذهب.

• **Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف.

1 A magnet attracts metal objects. ١. المغناطيس يجذب الأشياء المعدنية.



2 A magnet has two poles. ٢. المغناطيس لديه قطبان.



3 The rules of the magnet. ٣. قواعد المغناطيس.

The south pole attracts the north pole.

القطب الجنوبى يجذب القطب الشمالى فى المغناطيس.

The different poles pull together.

تتجاذب الأقطاب المختلفة معاً.

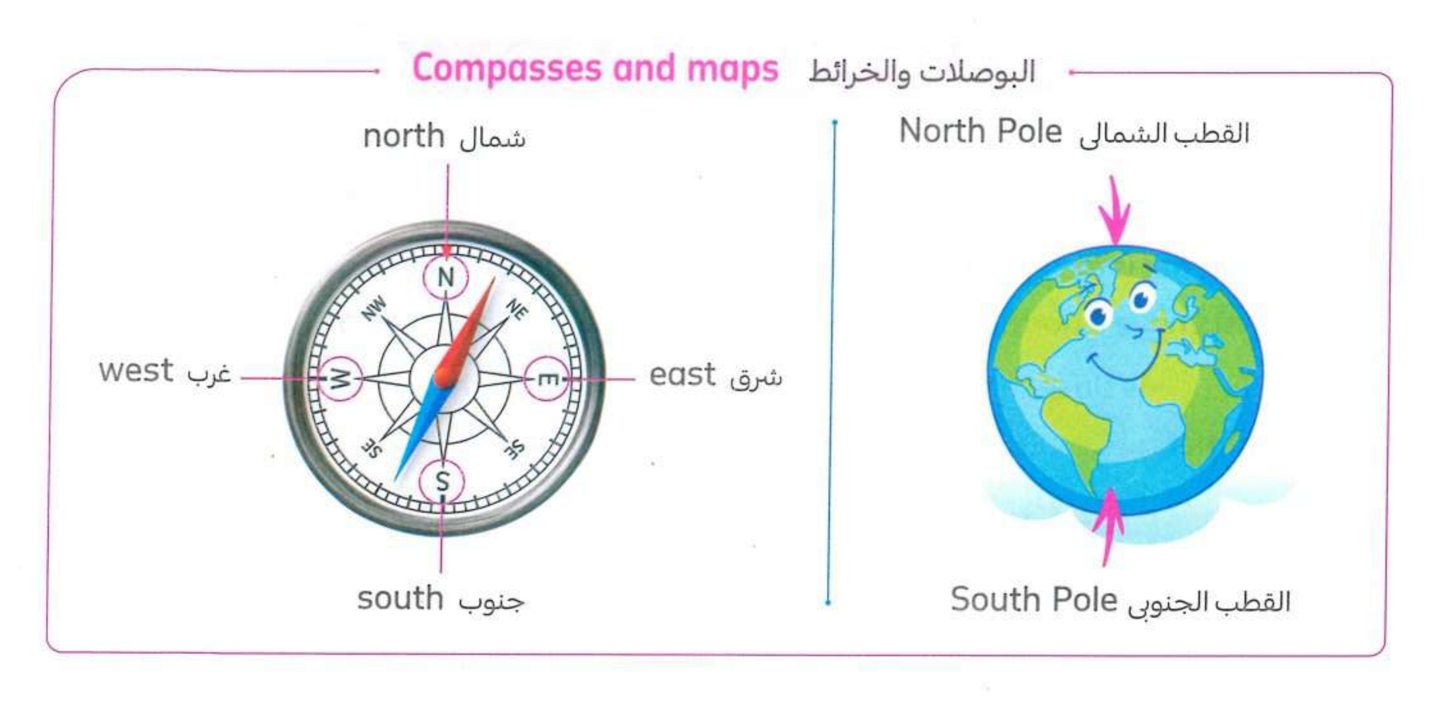
The same poles repel.

الأقطاب المتشابهة تتنافر .

The same poles push away.

الأقطاب المتشابهة تتباعد.

• **Look and identify.** انظر وتعرّف.



To ask about reasons using "Why". للسؤال عن الأسباب بإستخدام (Why) .

Why is it useful to use a compass ?
لماذا من المفيد استخدام البوصلة ؟

It is useful to use a compass because it can help us to navigate.
إنه من المفيد استخدام البوصلة لأنها يمكن أن تساعدنا على التنقل.

Because compass helps us to find our way in the desert.
لأن البوصلة تساعدنا على إيجاد طريقنا فى الصحراء.

• Help your child to ask about reasons using "Why ... ?" and answer using "Because....".

- ساعد طفلك أن يسأل عن الأسباب بإستخدام "Why ... ?" بمعنى "لماذا ... ؟" و الإجابة مستخدماً "Because" بمعنى لأن.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A. magnet – repels – attract – pole – direction

A magnet is a piece of metal. It can [1] .... or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south [2] .... When the north pole of one [3] .... is close to the south pole of another magnet, they attract. The south pole of a magnet [4] .... the south pole of another magnet.

B. invisible – pull – go – north – navigate

A magnetic field is an area around a magnet. It can [1] .... objects towards it. We can't see this - it is [2] .... A compass can help you [3] .... The needle in a compass is a magnet. It always points to the [4] ....

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A compass can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic needle, which will point to the magnetic North Pole. A map always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you read a map to show you where to go.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A .... has a magnetic needle.
   a. map b. compass c. magnet
2. A map always has a/an ....
   a. arrow b. pole c. needle

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can a compass show you ?

....

4. What does a compass have ?

....

5. Where will the magnetic needle point to ?

....

6. When can you use a compass ?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. .... is it useful to use a compass ?
   a. What b. Why c. Who
2. A compass .... us to find our way in the desert.
   a. helps b. help c. helping
3. A magnet .... a piece of metal.
   a. have b. are c. is
4. A compass .... a magnetic needle.
   a. has b. have c. are

4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. points - to - needle - the - The - north.

....

2. has - A map - an - arrow.

....

B. 1. will – a – They – need – compass.

....

2. will – where – They – know – to go.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Magnets

Guiding elements :

- metal
- attract
- pole

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

• Language use : Conditionals

I Vocabulary

pick up يلتقط

watch video يشاهد ڤيديو

board سبورة

umbrella مظلة

jacket چاكيت

cold بارد

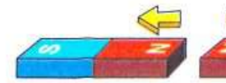
wet مبلل

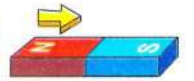
hungry جائع

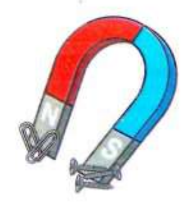
rain مطر/يمطر

• **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

1. If you put two north poles together, they will repel each other.
إذا وضعت قطبين شماليين معًا، فسوف يتنافرون.







2. If an object is made of metal, a magnet will pick it up.
إذا كان جسم ما مصنوعًا من المعدن، فسوف يلتقطه المغناطيس.

3. If you watch this video, you will learn about magnets.
إذا شاهدت هذا الفيديو، فسوف تتعلم عن المغناطيس.

4. If you put a magnet on a metal board, it will stick.
إذا وضعت مغناطيسًا على لوح معدني، فإنه سوف يلتصق.

5 If she touches the shape, the magnet will pick it up.

إذا لمست الشكل، المغناطيس سوف يلتقطه.

6 If he doesn't go that way, he'll get lost.

إذا لم يذهب فى هذا المسار، هو سوف يضل الطريق.

II Language

"If" first conditional حالة If الشرطية الأولى

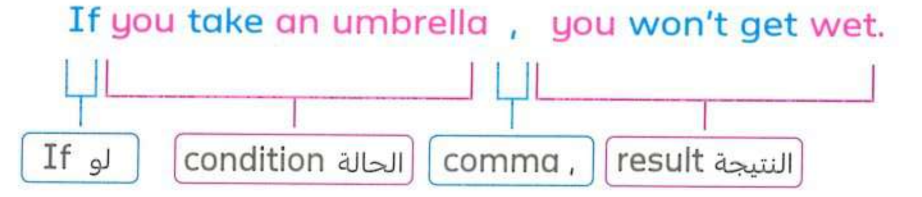
Usage • To talk about possibilities in the present or in the future.

للتحدث عن إمكانية حدوث شئ فى المضارع أو المستقبل.

Formation

If + subj. + present simple.........., subj. + will/won't + inf. ....

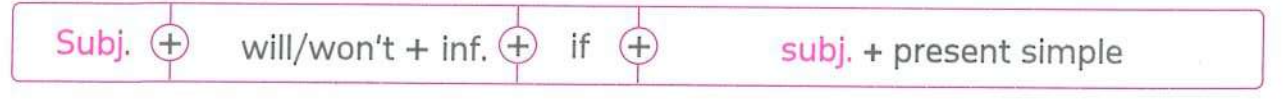
▶ Example :



If you take an umbrella , you won't get wet.

If he doesn't use a map, he will get lost.

إذا لم يستخدم خريطة سوف يضل الطريق.



Subj. + will/won't + inf. + if + subj. + present simple

▶ Ex :– Hana will catch the bus if she is quick.

– عندما تأتى [if] فى منتصف الجملة لا نضع [,] بين الجملتين.

Note!

will not = won't | will = 'll

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. If I go to my cousin, I .... play with her.
   a. do b. will c. does
2. If they watch this video, they will.......................... about magnets.
   a. learn b. learning c. learns
3. If she .... a jacket, she won't be cold.
   a. wear b. wearing c. wears
4. I won't .... outside if it is rainy.
   a. go b. going c. goes
5. If you .... put sugar in your coffee, it won't taste nice.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't
6. If I .... too many sweets, I'll feel sick.
   a. eats b. ate c. eat
7. If you eat your breakfast, you .... be hungry.
   a. will b. won't c. isn't
8. If an object .... made of metal, a magnet will attract it.
   a. are b. does c. is
9. If we miss [يفوت] our bus, we'll .... to school.
   a. to walk b. walk c. walked
10. She'll study math if she .... to the university.
    a. go b. went c. goes
11. If you .... wear a jacket, you'll get cold.
    a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't
12. If I don't go to bed early, I .... be tired.
    a. will b. am c. was
13. If she .... a trip, she will visit the pyramids.
    a. having b. has c. have
14. If you put a magnet on a metal table, it .... stick.
    a. would b. will c. could
15. If he .... that way, he'll get lost.
    a. go b. going c. goes
16. If I have money, I will .... a dress.
    a. buying b. buy c. bought
17. If Ali goes to the desert, he .... a camel.
    a. rode b. will ride c. riding

Lessons 4,5 & 6

- Types of motion
- Reading : Forces
- Language use

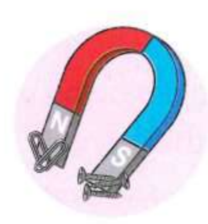
I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

land
يابسة / أرض

balance
توازن

bounce
وثب / ارتداد



magnetism
المغناطيسية

friction
احتكاك

Extra vocabulary

force	قوة	type	نوع
handle	مقبض	cart	عربة تجرها الخيول
movement	حركة	forward	أمام
contact force	قوة التلامس	speed	سرعة
slow down	تبطأ	liquid	سائل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
roll	يدور	rolled
drop	يسقط	dropped
change	يغير	changed
push	يدفع	pushed
move	يتحرك	moved

Irregular

Present		Past
hit	يضرب	hit
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought

II Listening and Reading

- **Look, listen and read.**

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Forces :

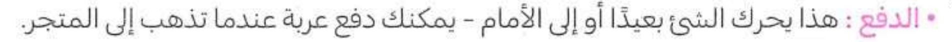
A force is something that can make things move. Magnetism is a type of force, but there are others :

• **القوى :** القوة هى شىء يمكن أن يجعل الأشياء تتحرك. المغناطيسية هى نوع من القوة، ولكن هناك أنواع أخرى :

Push :

this moves an object away or forwards - you can push a cart when you go to the store.

• **الدفع :** هذا يحرك الشئ بعيدًا أو إلى الأمام - يمكنك دفع عربة عندما تذهب إلى المتجر.



Pull :

this brings something towards you - you can pull on a door handle to open a door.

• **السحب :** هذا يجلب لك شيئًا ما - يمكنك سحب مقبض الباب لفتح الباب.

Friction :

When one object touches another object as it moves, there is a force between them. This is called friction. It can slow down the object that is moving.

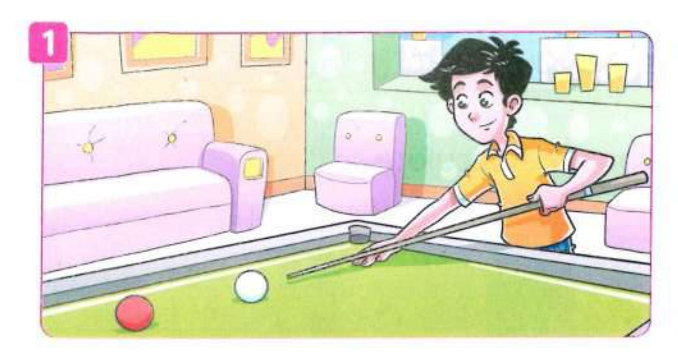
• **الاحتكاك :** عندما يتلامس شيئين أثناء تحرك أحدهما، تحدث قوة بينهم. هذا يسمى "الاحتكاك". يمكن هذه القوة أن تبطأ الشيء المتحرك.

Pushing, pulling and friction are contact forces.
The two objects have to touch each other for the movement to happen. The contact can stop, start, or change the speed or direction of the movement.

• **الدفع ، الجذب والاحتكاك :** هى قوى التلامس. يجب أن يتلامس الشيئين معًا لتحدث حركة. هذا التلامس يمكن أن يوقف، يبدأ أو يغير السرعة أو اتجاه الحركة.

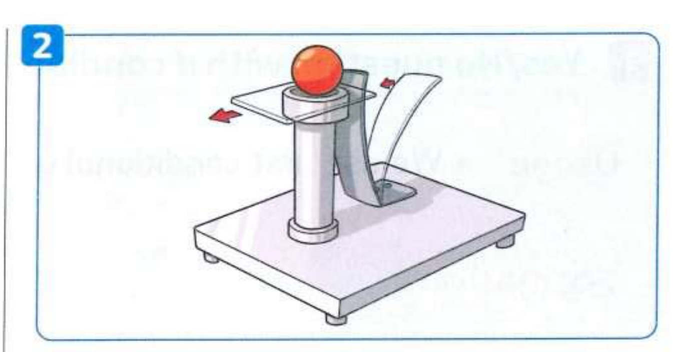
• **Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.



1 If I push the white ball, will the red ball move ?

إذا دفعت الكرة البيضاء، هل ستتحرك الكرة الحمراء؟

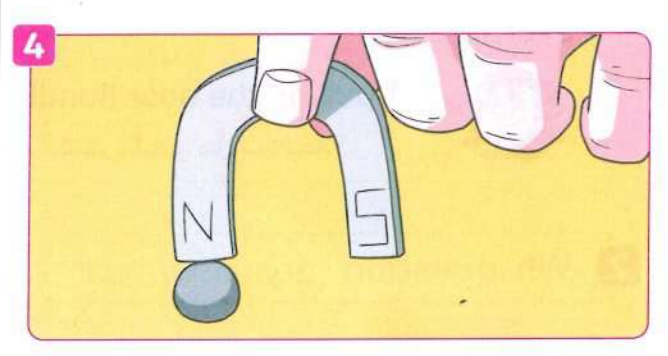


2 Will the ball drop if I move this ?

هل ستسقط الكرة إذا حركت هذا ؟

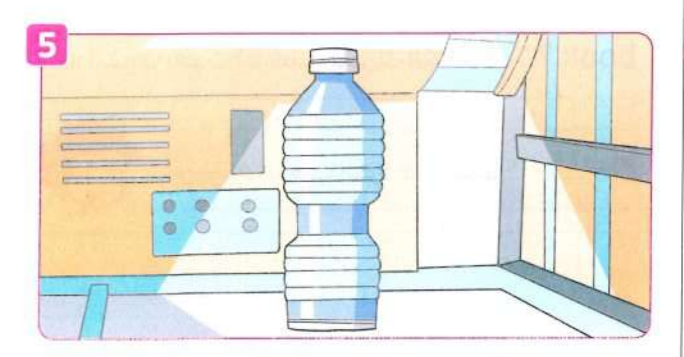
3 If we use a compass, will we get lost ?

إذا استخدمنا بوصلة، هل سنضل الطريق ؟



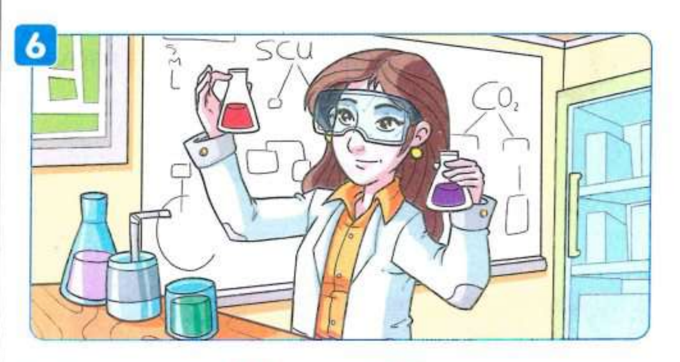
4 If we put a magnet here, will the metal ball move ?

إذا وضعنا مغناطيساً هنا، هل ستتحرك الكرة المعدن ؟



5 Will the water be cold if we put it in the fridge ?

هل سيبرد الماء إذا وضعناه في الثلاجة ؟



6 What will we see if we mix these liquids ?

ماذا سنرى إذا مزجنا هذه السوائل ؟

III Language

1 Yes/No question with if conditional السؤال بـ "هل ...؟" مع [if] الشرطية

Usage • We use first conditional questions to speculate.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى في الأسئلة للتخمين.

Formation

Will + subj. + inf.	if + subj. + present simple?
If + subj. + present simple,	will + subj. + inf. ....?
- Yes, subj. + will.	- No, subj. + won't.

▸ Example :

If I pull on the door handle, will I open it ?

إذا قمت بسحب مقبض الباب، هل سأفتحه ؟

Yes, you will.

نعم، ستفعلين.

2 Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Formation

Wh- word + will + inf. + if + subj + present simple.........?

▸ Example :

What will happen if we move the book ? ماذا سوف يحدث إذا قمنا بتحريك الكتاب ؟

Where will the ball go if I throw it ? أين سوف تذهب الكرة إذا ألقيتها ؟

Pop Quiz on Language

05 min

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Will the bell make a sound if I .... the string?
   a. pulled b. pull c. pulling
2. What will .... if I drop the pencil?
   a. happens b. happening c. happen
3. If I push the door, ... it open ?
   a. will b. did c. was

General Exercises | on Lessons 4,5&6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Pull – make – door – store – towards

Push force moves an object away or forwards. You can push a cart when you go to the [1] .... [2] .... force brings something [3] .... you. You can pull on a [4] .... handle to open a door.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Pushing, pulling, and friction are contact forces. The contact force means that the two objects have to touch each other for the movement to happen. The contact force can stop, start, or change the speed or direction of the movement. The pull force brings something towards you-you can pull on a door handle to open a door. Push force moves an object away or forwards - you can push a cart when you go to the store.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Pushing, pulling, and .... are contact forces.
   a. friction b. transportation c. bounce

2. The .... force moves an object away or forwards.
   a. pull b. push c. friction

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is a contact force ?

   ....

4. What force do you use to open a door ?

   ....

5. What can the contact force do ?

   ....

6. What can you push in the store ?

   ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. If you .... the ball, it will land over there.
   a. hit b. hitting c. hits

2. What .... we get if we mix red and blue ?

a. do b. are c. will

3. Will the water .... cold if we freeze it ?

a. been b. is c. be

4. If I pull on the door handle, ... I open it ?

a. will b. am c. have

4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. cart - I - push - a - can.

....

2. with - play - to - I - like - the magnet.

....

B. 1. push – to – I – the door – open – it.

....

2. can – a ball – You – or – hit – bounce.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Forces

Guiding elements :

- move
- friction
- object

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

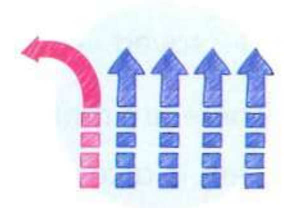
Lesson 7

• Learn Sounds with Busy Bee!

Phonics

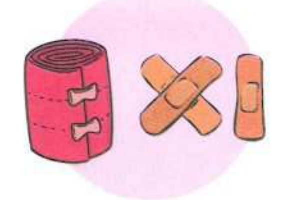
•The letter g makes the sound /dʒ/.

village قرية



change يتحول/يحول

energy طاقة



bandage ضمادة طبية

danger خطر

giraffe زرافة

Pop Quiz on Phonics

• Listen then circle the words that have /dʒ/ sound.

استمع ثم ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التى تحتوى على الصوت /dʒ/.

We have so much energy, energy.
Let's go to the village for an adventure!
In the village, we can see, we can see
A cat. Look, it's climbing a tree!
We have so much energy, energy.
Let's go to the village for an adventure!
In the village, we can see, we can see
A cat in a tree! Danger! Danger!
Can you see ?
A giraffe saved the cat in the tree !
The cat is hurt. It needs a bandage.
The cat is tired. It has no more energy!

لدينا الكثير من الطاقة، الطاقة. دعنا نذهب إلى القرية للمغامرة ! فى القرية يمكننا أن نرى، نرى قطة. انظروا إنها تتسلق شجرة ! لدينا الكثير من الطاقة، الطاقة. دعنا نذهب إلى القرية للمغامرة! فى القرية، يمكننا أن نرى، أن نرى قطة على شجرة ! خطرا خطر ! هل تستطيع أن ترى؟ زرافة أنقذت القطة فى الشجرة ! القطة مصابة. تحتاج القطة إلى ضمادة. القطة مُتعبة. ليس لديها المزيد من الطاقة!

General Exercises | on Lesson 7

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. banda _ e | 2. villa _ e | 3. dan _ er | 4. _ iraffe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

climbing - bandage - saved - giraffes - change

I have an adventure in a village. There are many (1)........................ in the village. They have so much energy. And there is a cat (2)........................ a tree. The cat is in danger. A giraffe (3)........................ the cat in the tree. The cat is hurt. It needs a (4)........................ . The cat is tired and has no more energy.

3 Read, order and write.

A. 1. is - The cat - hurt.

....

2. saved - in - A giraffe - the cat - the tree.

....

B. 1. have - much - We - so - energy.

....

2. go – the – Let's – to – village.

....

4 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your village

Guiding elements :

- climb
- tree
- cows

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 8

• CLIL : Science : Friction

I Vocabulary

surface	سطح	ground	أرض
messy	فوضوى	position	موضع / مكان
experiment	تجربة	smooth	ناعم / أملس
ramp	منحدر	gently	بلطف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
run	يجرى	ran

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• rub out — يزيل / يمحى

II Listening and Reading

• **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

Friction experiment

Friction is a contact force between two surfaces. We use it every day, from when we put our foot on the ground to run, to when we use an eraser to rub out pencil marks.

الاحتكاك هو قوة تلامس بين سطحين. نستخدمها كل يوم، عندما نضع أقدامنا على الأرض للركض، إلى عندما نستخدم ممحاة لنمحى علامات القلم الرصاص.

Motions حركات	Observations ملاحظات	Conclusions نتائج
Roll a toy car down a smooth ramp. - لف السيارة اللعبة لتنحدر أسفل منحدر ناعم.	The car travels. - تنتقل السيارة.	The car goes gently from the top of the ramp. - السيارة تتحرك بلطف من أعلى المنحدر. "is the farthest distance" - هى أبعد مسافة
Roll a toy car down a ramp with glue and sand. - لف السيارة اللعبة أسفل منحدر به الصمغ و الرمل.	The car travels. - تنتقل السيارة.	We put messy paint on our ramp. The car traveled slowly. - نضع رسومات بطريقة عشوائية على المنحدر الخاص بنا. السيارة انتقلت ببطئ. "is the shortest distance" - هى أقصر مسافة

• Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

Friction works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more slowly.

- يعمل الاحتكاك فى الاتجاه المعاكس للطريقة التى يتحرك بها الجسم، لذا فهو يجعل الأشياء تتحرك بشكل أبطأ.

• Read, learn and identify.

اقرأ ، تعلم وتعرف.

Examples of friction

Putting a foot on the ground to run. وضع قدم على الأرض للجرى.	Rubbing out pencil marks with an eraser. فرك علامات قلم الرصاص بالممحاة.	Bicycle wheels moving on the road. عجلات دراجة تتحرك على الطريق

• Read and learn.

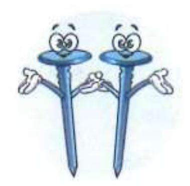
اقرأ وتعلم.

Type of ramp	The farthest distance	The shortest distance
a ramp with glue and sand		✓
a ramp with ice	✓	
a ramp with thick carpet		✓
a ramp with shiny metal	✓	

Lesson 9

• CLIL : Science : Magnets

I Vocabulary



nails مسامير	factory مصنع	grass عشب	transportation وسائل المواصلات	farmer فلاح	wire سلك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular

Present		Past
stick	يلصق	stuck

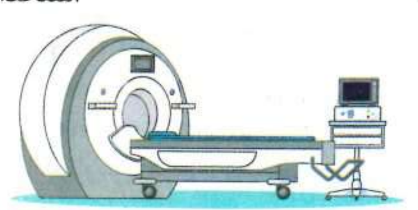
Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• bits of	قليلًا من / قطعًا من	• sort out	يصنف
• lift off	يرفع	• in the right place	فى المكان الصحيح

II Listening and Reading

• **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Uses of magnets استخدامات المغناطيس



Magnets are useful at home and at school.
We can stick photos to magnetic surfaces, or use magnets to keep doors closed. But they are important in lots of other ways, too.

المغناطيس مفيد فى المنزل والمدرسة. يمكننا لصق الصور على الأسطح المغناطيسية، أو استخدام المغناطيس لإبقاء الأبواب مغلقة. لكنها مهمة فى نواحٍ عديدة أخرى أيضًا.

Medicine : In hospitals, an MRI scan (magnetic resonance imaging) uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organs inside our bodies. An X-ray can take pictures of bones, but an MRI scan can give doctors more information. The scans are very useful and save many lives.

مجال الطب : فى المستشفيات، يستخدم فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسى (التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسى) يستخدم مجالًا مغناطيسيًا لعمل صور للأعضاء داخل أجسامنا. يمكن للأشعة السينية التقاط صور للعظام، لكن فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسى يمكن أن يمنح الأطباء مزيدًا من المعلومات. عمليات المسح مفيدة للغاية وتنقذ العديد من الأرواح.

Farming : We know that cows eat grass, but sometimes they can eat bits of metal that are on the ground in fields, such as nails or bits of wire. Farmers give cows a magnet to swallow. The magnet stays inside the cow's stomach and attracts all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's digestive system.

الزراعة : - نحن نعلم أن الأبقار تأكل العشب، لكن فى بعض الأحيان يمكنها أن تأكل قطعًا من المعدن على الأرض فى الحقول، مثل المسامير أو قطع الأسلاك. يمنح المزارعون الأبقار مغناطيسًا لتبتلعها. يبقى المغناطيس داخل معدة البقرة ويجذب كل المعدن. هذا يمنع المعادن من إتلاف الجهاز الهضمى للبقرة.

Factories : Big magnets can sort out materials for recycling, or even move old cars.

المصانع : - يمكن للمغناطيسات الكبيرة فرز المواد لإعادة التدوير، أو حتى نقل السيارات القديمة.

Computers : Magnets are used to store information in computers. The magnetic areas used for this are narrower than human hair!

أجهزة الكمبيوتر : تستخدم المغناطيسات لتخزين المعلومات فى أجهزة الكمبيوتر. المناطق المغناطيسية المستخدمة لهذا أضيق من شعر الإنسان!

Transportation : Some of the most modern train systems use magnets. The train is lifted off the ground, so it has less friction. The magnet keeps it in the right place. The train can travel very quickly !

وسائل المواصلات : تستخدم بعض أنظمة القطارات الحديثة المغناطيسات. يتم رفع القطار عن الأرض، لذلك يكون الاحتكاك أقل. المغناطيس يبقيه فى المكان الصحيح. يمكن للقطار السفر بسرعة كبيرة!

Answer the following question :

Learn 1. What do cows eat ?
- They eat grass.

Practice 2. Why are magnets useful in computers ?
....

General Exercises | on Lessons 8&9

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A. stick - lives - information - bones - scans

In hospitals, an MRI scan uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organs inside our bodies. An X-ray can take pictures of [1] .... An MRI scan can give doctors more [2] .... The [3] .... are very useful. They save many [4] ....

B. magnet - digestive - fields - keep - inside

Cows eat grass, but sometimes they can eat bits of metal that are on the ground in [1] .... such as nails or bits of wire. Farmers give cows a [2] .... to swallow. The magnet stays [3] .... the cow's stomach and attracts all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's [4] .... system.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Friction is a contact force between two surfaces. It is useful in our life. We use it every day, from when we put our foot on the ground to run, to when we use an eraser to rub out pencil marks. Friction works in the opposite direction to the way the object is moving, so it makes things move more slowly.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Friction force makes things move more ....
   a. loudly b. quickly c. slowly
2. .... is useful in our life.
   a. Surface b. Friction c. Ramp

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does friction work ?

....

4. What is friction ?

....

5. Why do we use an eraser ?

....

6. How often do we use friction ?

....

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. This text is about "......................." .
   a. Eco-tourism b. New places c. Education d. Healthy diet

2. The underlined word " **sustainable**" means "................ for the environment ".
   a. bad b. ugly c. good d. harmful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is eco-tourism ?

....

4. Egypt is an amazing place for vacations. Explain.

....

5. Which is better for the environment, traditional tourism or eco-tourism ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. important – respect – It's – to – nature.

....

2. trash – leave – We – on – mustn't – beaches.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You .... [mustn't] respect wildlife.
2. You mustn't .... [walking] in the desert when it is hot.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i love visiting the desert

....

2. where can we go snorkeling

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Eco-tourism"

Guiding elements :

- sustainable
- hotels

....

....

....

....

Lesson **3**

Part 1

- The benefits of eco-tourism
- Language Focus

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

sightseeing	زيارة المعالم السياحية	local people	السكان المحليين	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	campsite	معسكر تخييم

• Extra vocabulary

boring	ممل	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية	support	يدعم - يساند
deadline	الموعد النهائي	explore	يستكشف	recycle	يعيد تدوير
keen	متحمس - مهتم	benefits	فوائد	visitors	زائرين
hard work	عمل شاق	cycling	ركوب الدراجات	traffic	حركة المرور
relaxing	مريح	activities	انشطة		

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

whenever possible	إذا أمكن	cause less damage	تسبب ضرر أقل
provide / create jobs	توفر وظائف	Good for you !	جيد لك !
take care of = look after	يعتنى بـ	try out	يقوم بتجربة

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

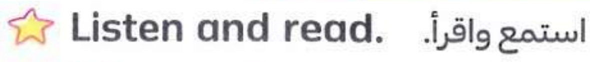
Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The benefits of eco-tourism	look after-environment	Eco-tourism looks after the environment.
	jobs - local	Eco-tourism creates jobs for local people.
	eco-tourist - explore	Eco-tourists like to explore new ways of traveling that don't damage the environment.
	activities - cycling	Eco-tourist activities are cycling, snorkeling and wildlife watching.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My dad bought me a new bicycle because I like ....
   a. cycling b. hiking c. walking d. running
2. Eating healthy food and doing sports have many ....
   a. causes b. disadvantages c. benefits d. feelings
3. Parents always .... their children.
   a. choose b. support c. fight d. change
4. Many scientists work hard to .... new things that would help the environment.
   a. hide b. cover c. explore d. plant

II Listening and Reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

AudioScript

Lina's presentation about eco-tourism

Lina :

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

العرض التقديمى اليوم يدور حول السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل للغاية لذلك يجب أن نعتنى بها. ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس فى زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment, but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea.

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعنى فى بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدًا من الفنادق الكبيرة وحركة مرور كبيرة جدًا. هذا يمكن أن يسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها ولكن ليس بطريقة تضر بالبيئة. هذه هى أفكارى حول سبب اعتقادى أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة.

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون فى حمايتها.

If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.

إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التى يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون فى ضرر أقل للبيئة.

If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. إذا أقام السائحون فى أماكن إقامة بسيطة وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة.

If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.
إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين.

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions ? شكرًا على استماعكم. هل هناك أية أسئلة ؟

How much of an eco-tourist are you ?

- You prefer traditional vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

أنت تفضل السياحة التقليدية ولكن مازال فى إمكانك أن تكون سائح بيئى من خلال مساعدة البيئة أثناء التنقل من مكان لآخر. على سبيل المثال حاول القيام بالمشى أو التنقل بالحافلة (الأتوبيس) والقطار كما يمكنك أيضًا إعادة تدوير القمامة إن أمكن.

- You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

أنت تريد أن تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد المجتمعات المحلية ولذلك أنت مهتم أيضًا بمعرفة المزيد عن السياحة البيئية. عندما تذهب إلى عطلة المرة القادمة عليك بتجربة بعض الأنشطة التى يقوم بها السياح البيئيين مثل مشاهدة الحياة البرية وركوب الدراجات أو الغطس.

- You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you !

أنت سائح بيئى ممتاز ! أنت ترغب فى اكتشاف طرق جديدة للتنقل وممارسة الأنشطة التى لا تدمر البيئة. جيد لك!

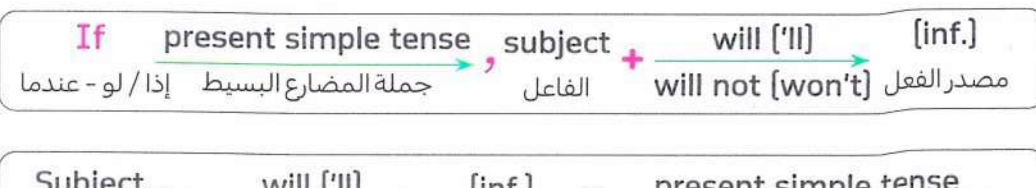
III Language Focus

The first conditional (If) : الحالة الشرطية الأولى:

Usage : الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future. • نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء من المحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.

Formation : التكوين



If (إذا / لو - عندما) + present simple tense (جملة المضارع البسيط) **,** subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل)

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) **if** present simple tense (جملة المضارع البسيط)

• لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود (If) فى البداية.

ex : - If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

- He won't catch the bus if he doesn't leave now.

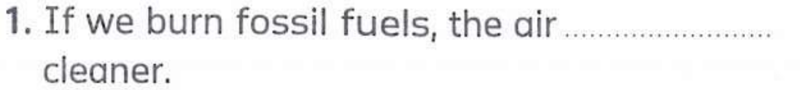
Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If you go to bed late tonight, you .... (will) get up early tomorrow. (الجيزة - السادس من اكتوبر ٢٠٢٤)
2. If you have a problem, I will .... (helping) you. (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)
3. If we .... (not run) quickly, we'll miss the bus. (الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢٤)
4. If he .... (not practice) enough, he won't pass his driving test.
5. If she .... (feel) thirsty, she will drink some water.
6. If we .... (not work) together, we will miss the deadline.
7. If I go to the supermarket next Friday, I will .... (bought) some rice.
8. If they .... (made) mistakes, we'll be very angry.
9. Ali will .... (being) tired if he plays football for two hours.
10. If he .... (be) late, we will go without him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. If we burn fossil fuels, the air .... cleaner.
   a. be b. won't be c. been d. being
2. If you .... plastic and glass, you'll produce less waste.
   a. recycling b. to recycle c. recycle d. are recycle
3. If my uncle .... enough money, he won't buy a new car.
   a. didn't have b. doesn't have c. won't have d. don't have

Lesson **3** Part 2
▸ CLIL : Science
▸ Pronunciation

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

eagle نسر

swift طائر السمامة

pelican بجعة

kingfisher طائر الرفراف

• Extra vocabulary

northern European countries دول شمال أوروبا	Mediterranean coast ساحل البحر المتوسط	Lake Qarun بحيرة قارون
find out يكتشف	oases واحات	flock of سرب من
migration هجرة	get to يصل إلى	long journey رحلة طويلة
across عبر / خلال	scientist عالِم	flamingo الفلامنجو(طائر البشروش)

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Bird migration	migrate	- Many birds migrate to find warmer weather.
	flock - pelican	- You can see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water.
	Lake Qarun-flamingos	- Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.
	fly - distances	- Migrating birds fly very long distances.

05 min. Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... has a big beak, so it can catch fish easily.
   a. baboon b. turtle c. pelican d. lizard
2. Siwa is one of the Egyptian .... and it's a good place for eco-tourism.
   a. oases b. lakes c. rivers d. seas
3. We saw a nice .... of birds in the sky.
   a. line b. flock c. bag d. packet

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Bird migration

A long journey

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

رحلة طويلة

تقوم العديد من الطيور بالهجرة من وإلى مصر بسبب موقعها المتميز في العالم. فالطقس في شمال أفريقيا أكثر سخونة من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور دول شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئًا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمامة.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجـر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. في كثير من الأحيان يمكنـك رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه على سـواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسـط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تُعد بحيرة قارون في الفيوم مكان جيد لرؤية طيور البشروش.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go ? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تحلق بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تريد الوصول إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب ؟ ربما يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلًا في محاولة معرفة كيفية قيام الطيور بذلك!

III Pronunciation

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1 A syllable

- is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

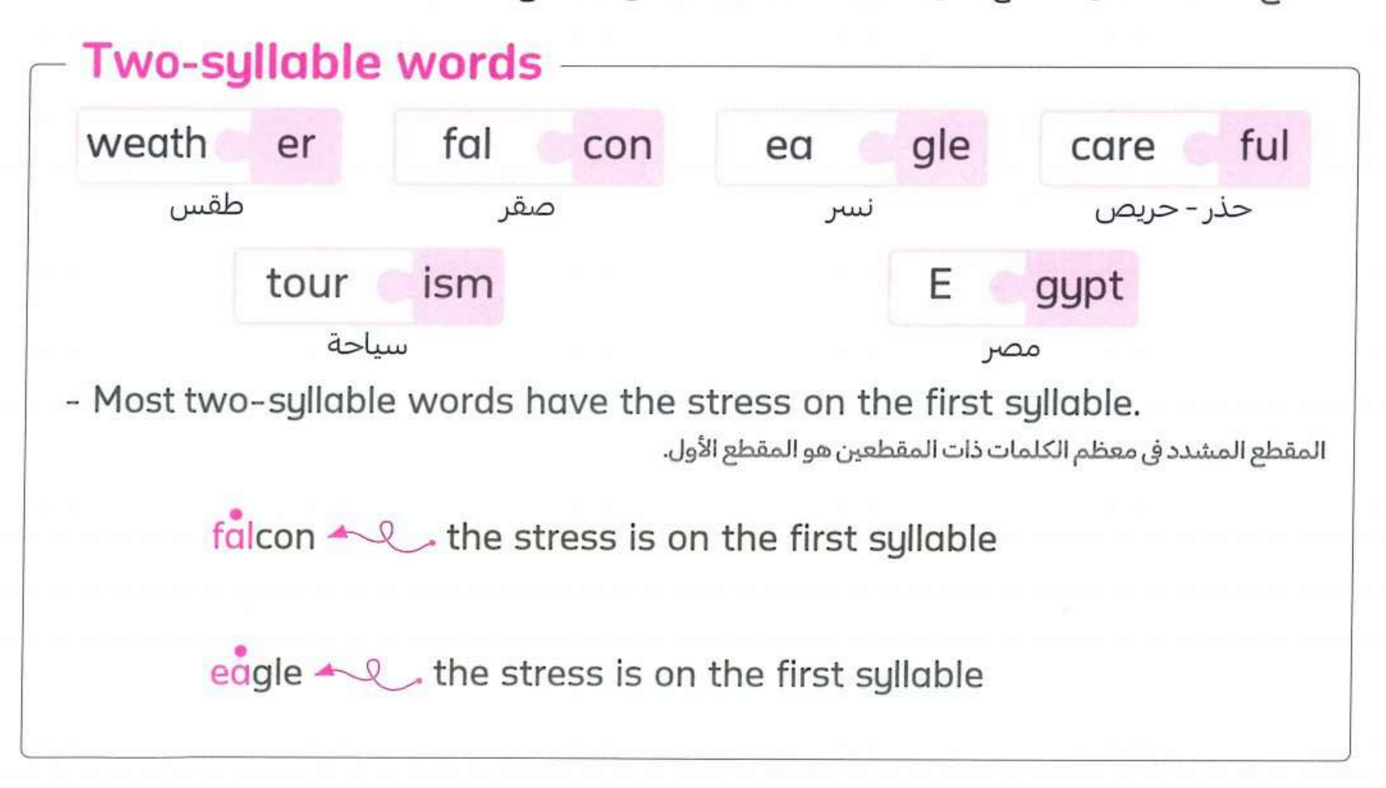
مقطع لفظى : هو جزء من كلمة تحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد.

2 Stressed syllable

- is the syllable which is pronounced stronger than the other syllables.

المقطع المشدد : هو المقطع الذى ينطق بشكل أقوى من باق المقاطع .

Two-syllable words



- Most two-syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

المقطع المشدد فى معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين هو المقطع الأول.

falcon → the stress is on the first syllable

eagle → the stress is on the first syllable

Three-syllable words

suc cess ful ناجح	fla min go الفلامنجو (طائر البشروش)	pel i can بجعة
im por tant مهم	king fish er طائر الرفراف	snor kel ing غطس

- Three-syllable words can have the stress on the first or the second syllable.

المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات ذات الثلاث مقاطع أما أن يكون المقطع الأول أو المقطع الثانى.

pelican → the stress is on the first syllable

flamingo → the stress is on the second syllable

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

- We go snorkeling in hot weather.

- Tourism is important in Egypt.

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Read and say the words then write them in the correct column.

careful – snorkeling - pelican - weather - flamingo - falcon

Two syllables	Three syllables
....	....
....	....
....	....

2 How many syllables do the words in bold have ?

1. **Eagles** migrate to other continents (قارات). ....
2. The **kingfisher** lives near rivers. ....

General Exercises | on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. North Africa is .... than Europe.
   a. colder b. hotter c. cooler d. warmer
2. Many birds leave northern European countries to warmer places in ....
   a. summer b. winter c. fall d. spring
3. Lots of interesting birds migrate to ....
   a. China b. France c. Italy d. Egypt
4. Eagles, ..., and swifts migrate to Egypt.
   a. chickens b. ducks c. bats d. falcons

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use .... bags of shopping to protect the environment.
   a. harmful b. useless c. eco-friendly d. bad
2. Wildlife watching, cycling and snorkeling are interesting ....
   a. jobs b. activities c. subjects d. tools
3. Try to .... trash whenever possible to protect our environment.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. throw d. drop

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

trash - bus - accommodation - damage

Eco-tourists like to explore new ways of traveling. They like to do activities that don't (1) .... the environment. They try to walk or travel by (2) .... .Trains are also a very good idea. Eco-tourists stay in simple (3) .... Tourism provides jobs for local people, so it is very useful for us.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate from a country to another to find warmer weather. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large **flocks** of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way to know where they go. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Bird migration   b. Bird's feathers   c. Warm climate   d. Cold weather

2. The underlined word "**flocks**" has the same meaning as " .... ".
   a. habitats   b. groups   c. animals   d. places

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can we see flamingos ?

....

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

5. Why do birds migrate from a country to another ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I'm - have - If - hungry, - I'll - a snack.

....

2. take - environment - Eco-tourists - care - of - the.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. If she .... [have] an exam, she will study hard.
2. If we .... [not work] together, we won't achieve our goal.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. why is eco-tourism a good idea

....

2. egypt is a very beautiful country

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY [50] words about migrating birds to your friend Hany. Your name is Samy. Your email address is samy@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

Guiding elements : • warmer weather • long distance

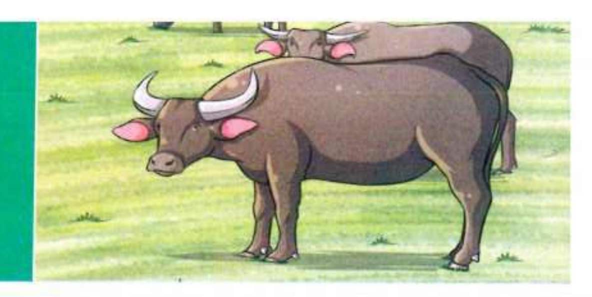
مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

From	
To	
Subject	

....,
....
....
....
....

Lessons **4&5**

- Writing : A blog
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

flood	فيضان	the Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد
drought	جفاف	scuba dive	يغوص

Extra vocabulary

planet	كوكب	blog	مدونة	bright	لامع
climate change	تغير المناخ	garden box	حوض زراعى به زهور	locals	السكان المحليين
shark	سمك القرش	forest	غابة	space	مسافة - مساحة
causes	أسباب	effects	تأثيرات	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	fires	حرائق		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	drop	يسقط / يلقى	dropped
waste	يهدر - يبدد	wasted	plant	يزرع	planted
allow	يسمح	allowed			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make sure	يتأكد	cut down	يقطع
sea life	الحياة البحرية	famous for	مشهور بـ

Study this Definition ادرس هذا التعريف

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
a habitat	is a place where an animal or plant lives الموطن : هو المكان الذى يعيش فيه النبات أو الحيوان

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Animal habitats	protect - habitat	We should try to protect animal habitat.
	animals - planet	Animals are part of our planet.
	healthy - place	When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place.
	wildlife - protect	When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

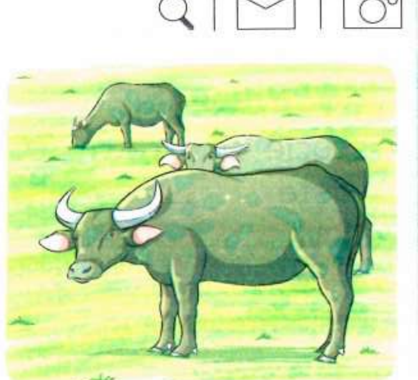
▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... are very dangerous sea animals.
   a. Pelicans b. Lizards c. Sharks d. Lions
2. Earth is the .... we live on.
   a. star b. planet c. bird d. subject
3. Because of ...., many plants died as they couldn't get enough water.
   a. sun b. drought c. air d. rain
4. We should .... paper and plastic to look after the environment.
   a. waste b. cut c. recycle d. drop

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Home Archive Contact Pages



Hello, I'm Arwa - welcome to my blog ! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.
I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

مرحبًا أنا أروى - مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي ! واليوم أكتب عن شيء في اعتقادي أنه هام للغاية. فأنا أرى أن من المهم أن نحاول جميعًا حماية البيئات الحيوانية. فالحيوانات بحاجة إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش، ولإيجاد طعام، ولرعاية صغارها. فهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التي نقوم بها لا تلحق بهم ضرر.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك العديد من البيئات المختلفة في مصر مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والأنهار. إذا قمنا بالحفاظ على هذه البيئات، فهذا الأمر سيكون شيء جيد للجميع. فعلى سبيل المثال، عندما تكون البيئة صحية، يمكن لكثير من الحيوانات أن تعيش في مكان واحد. وباتباع سياحة بيئية جيدة، يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. ويعتبر هذا جيد لكل من الدولة والشعب ايضًا. فعندما يتعلم الأشخاص عن الحياة البرية، يرغبون في الحفاظ عليها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space - here's a garden box I made for my window !

علينا جميعًا التفكير فى الأشياء التى يمكننا القيام بها لحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال يجب ألا نهدر المياه أو نلقى بالقمامة. يمكننا أيضًا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى يتوقف الناس عن قطع الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. وهذا الأمر لا يحتاج لمساحة كبيرة، فها هو الحوض الزراعى الذى أعددته لنافذتى!

To write a blog about a habitat, you should :

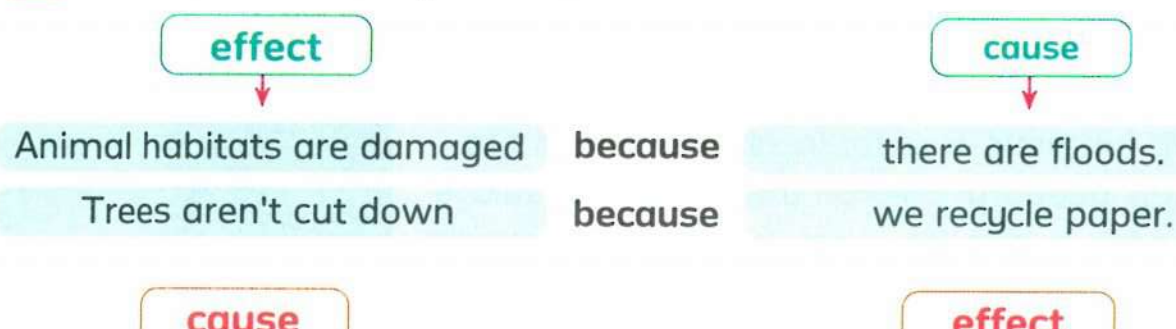
▶ **Find out**

- which animals / plants live there
- what problems this habitat has
- how we can help it

▶ **Use**

"because, so, and, but, must and mustn't"

1 **"because** or **so** to explain causes and effects".



We grow plants and flowers **so** birds and insects have food.

A habitat is safe and healthy **so** lots of animals can live there.

2 **must / mustn't** ⟶ to say what is important.

ex.: We mustn't waste water.

3 **"and"** ⟶ to link ideas.

ex.: We saw turtles, pelicans, and lizards when we went wildlife-watching.

4 **"but"** ⟶ to show contrast.

ex.: This was a beautiful river, but there is pollution in it now.

Remember

- You can add a photo to your blog to make it more attractive.
  يمكنك إضافة صورة لجعل المدونة شيقة أكثر.
- The blog usually gives the writer's opinion about something.
  غالبًا ما تقدم المدونة رأى الكاتب بخصوص شىء ما.
- You should use first person pronoun "I" and "we". يجب استخدام ضمائر المتكلم.

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

▶ Write a blog about animal habitat.

....

....

....

Read the leaflet and learn. اقرأ المنشور وتعلم.

The Ras Mohammed National Park

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching. The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

محمية رأس محمد

تعد محمية رأس محمد التى تقع على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة فى شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتى الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغطس والغوص هنا.
يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية، وربما أسماك القرش. وهناك الكثير من الحياة البرية الأخرى أيضًا، وهى مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.
تعتبر المحمية الطبيعية مكان محصن ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها شديدة الجمال، يأتى الكثير من الزائرين ويركبوا القوارب أو يقوموا بالسباحة أو الغطس فى البحر.

General Exercises | on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We should all try to .... animal habitats.
   a. protect b. damage c. destroy d. lose
2. Animals need .... places to live.
   a. busy b. free c. empty d. safe
3. Animals are part of our ....
   a. plane b. building c. planet d. plant
4. .... can cause problems for animal habitats.
   a. Cleaning b. Climate change c. Planting trees d. Recycling

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Don't .... down trees to save animals.
   a. allow b. plant c. drop d. cut
2. We can .... flowers and plants to help animal habitats.
   a. waste b. lose c. plant d. damage
3. You can do a lot of water activities like scuba .... in Egypt.
   a. riding b. diving c. driving d. hiking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect – wildlife – place – damage

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt such as deserts, seas, mountains, and rivers. It's good for everybody if we (1) .... these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one (2) .... With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for people, too. When people learn about (3) .... , they want to protect it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a **fantastic** area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Coral reefs
   b. The Ras Mohammed National Park
   c. Bird watching
   d. Swimming and snorkeling
2. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means " .... ".
   a. late
   b. ugly
   c. wonderful
   d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. What activities can you do in the Red Sea ?

....

5. What is the Ras Mohammed National Park famous for ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to – need – places – Animals – safe – live.

....

2. problems – habitat – What – the desert – have – does ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We wanted to clean-up the beach .... [so] there was trash on it.
2. We saw turtles, pelicans, ... [but] lizards when we went wildlife-watching.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. how can we help our environment

....

2. we should all protect animal habitats

....

8 Write a blog of FIFTY (50) words about different ways to protect habitats using the following guiding elements. Your name is Essam.

Guiding elements : • drop litter • the desert

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Essam BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل غير مباشر.

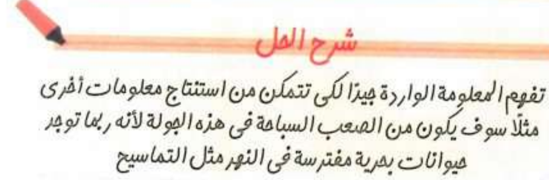
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون موجودة بشكل غير مباشر فى النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!



1. Why will it be difficult for them to swim in the river ?
   - Because there might be dangerous animals like crocodiles in the river !
2. How do we know that the tour will be fantastic ?
   - They will see the birds and animals which live near the water.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Adam. I love visiting desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

1. Why do you think bringing a tent is important for visiting desert at night ?
   ....
2. Why do you think they liked visiting desert in the evening ?
   ....

2 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

must / mustn't ⟶ [inf. مصدر الفعل]	يستخدم [مصدر الفعل] بعد [must / mustn't]
If + present simple مضارع بسيط, subject + will + inf.	تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الاولى [if] للتحدث عن أشياء من المحتمل ان تحدث فى المستقبل

Learn

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 You must ...... [taking] your medicine.	take	نستخدم المصدر بعد must
2 If I ...... [made] a mistake, my dad will be angry.	make	نستخدم مضارع بسيط بعد If فى الحالة الشرطية الاولى
3 If he doesn't study, he ...... [didn't] get good marks.	won't	نستخدم won't لان الجملة الثانية جملة جواب الشرط فى زمن المستقبل البسيط
4 We must ...... [respecting] our teachers.	respect	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد must

Practice

▸ Write the the reason.		◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.
1 You must ...... [doing] your homework.	do	....
2 I will catch the bus if I ...... [ran] fast.	run	....
3 If he ...... [sleep] early, he will go to school early.	sleeps	....
4 You must ...... [ate] healthy food.	eat	....

▸ Write the correction.		◄ اكتب التصحيح.
1 If I have money, I ...... [am] buy a new car.	....	الجملة الثانية جملة جواب الشرط فى الحالة الشرطية الاولى
2 We mustn't ...... [talked] in the library.	....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد mustn't
3 I will ...... [am] tired if I sleep late.	....	نستخدم [المصدر] بعد will
4 You ...... [mustn't] respect nature.	....	نستخدم [must] لأن الجملة تتحدث عن شئ يجب فعله

3 Sentence Building

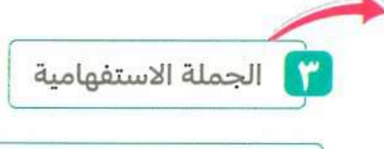
• تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

1	are – You – getting – idea – the.
2	country – is – Egypt – amazing – an.
3	tour – a – We – going – are – on.
4	will – groups – We – walk – in – small.
5	place – a very – interesting – It – is.
6	eco-tourist – You – great – a – are.
7	birds – migrate – Many – Egypt – to.

1 فاعل	2 فعل	3 باقي الجملة .
I	want	to succeed.

1	your – Bring – camera.
2	throw – Don't – trash – beaches – on.
3	careful – the – Be – environment – in – natural.
4	scare – Don't – birds.

1 Don't	2 مصدر الفعل	3 باقي الجملة .
Don't	swim	here.



1	are – Where – going – you ?
2	protect – can – How – we – the environment ?
3	do – What – we – can ?

1 كلمة استفهام	2 فعل مساعد	3 فاعل	4 فعل	5 باق السؤال ?
What	does	it	mean ?	

4 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٩ جملة].

1 Eco-tourism in Egypt

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment[1]. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism[2]. It is also designed to protect nature[3]. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution[4]. Eco-tourism is a good way for people to respect nature[5].

2 An eco-tourism vacation

We're going on snorkel safari to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation[6]! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish[7]. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs[8]. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips[9].

3 The Ras Mohammed National Park

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit[10]. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather[11]. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks[12]. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching[13].

4 Different habitats in Egypt

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers[14]. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats[15]. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place[16]. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays[17]. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too[18]. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it[19].

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Free as a bird

If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 **Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.**

flock – plans – successful – strange – fine

Nada : Hello, Salma. What does this proverb "The early bird catches the worm." mean?

Salma : Hello, Nada. Well, this proverb means to be (1) ...., you need to be the first to do something.

Nada : How about this one "Birds of a feather flock together." ?

Salma : If they (2) .... together, that means they stay in a large group.

Nada : Okay, here's a (3) .... one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

Salma : Maybe it's about being careful before you know something will happen.

Nada : So you don't make too many (4) .... before something is real!

Salma : Yes. Well done !

My Language

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. You .... (must) leave trash on beaches.
2. If it doesn't rain, animals .... (didn't) have enough water.
3. You must .... (respects) nature when you go wildlife-watching.
4. If I .... (is) hungry, I'll eat a snack.

My Writing

3 **Write a blog of about (50 - 60) words about animal habitats. Your name is Hassan.**

Hassan BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

My Project

4 **Make an information leaflet for visitors to the Nile Delta.**

....
....
....
....

◯ قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 10

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة العاشرة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

sustainable	مستدام
accommodation	إقامة
ideal	مثالى
respect	يحترم
vacation	اجازة
journey	رحلة (طويلة)
habitat	موطن - بيئة
migrate	يهاجر
similar	متشابه
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
successful	ناجح
sensible	منطقى / معقول

Pronunciation

- Two-syllable words

- Three-syllable words

Language

1 **must** يجب أن / **mustn't** لا يجب أن

A Subject فاعل + must + inf. مصدر الفعل....

ex.: You must get up early. It is a school day.

B Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل....

ex.: You mustn't cross the street when the traffic light is red.

---

2 **The first conditional (If) :** الحالة الشرطية الأولى (If) :

Formation : التكوين

If → present simple tense جملة المضارع البسيط , subj. + → will ('ll) + inf. / will not (won't) + inf.

ex.: If you study hard, you will pass the exams.

Test 7 on Unit 10

• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fares is going on a .... next week.
   a. tour b. trip c. picnic d. project
2. They will visit quiet .... on a small bus.
   a. museums b. parks c. cinemas d. beaches
3. The .... in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food.
   a. mountain b. sea c. soil d. sand
4. They are going to bring their .... to take lots of photos.
   a. shoes b. sunglasses c. cameras d. bags

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When people .... the environment, they want to protect it.
   a. damage b. respect c. destroy d. pollute
2. Eco-tourism is more .... than traditional tourism.
   a. sustainable b. expensive c. dangerous d. harmful
3. We mustn't swim here because there might be .... !
   a. lions b. crocodiles c. tigers d. elephants

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

water – birds – recycle – plant

With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste (1) .... or drop litter. We can (2) .... paper, so people don't cut down trees. We also (3) .... flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

People who go bird-watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too **close** to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**close**" means " .... ".
   a. near   b. far   c. small   d. big
2. When we go .... , we mustn't get close to the birds.
   a. swimming   b. snorkeling   c. flying   d. bird-watching

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. Why do migrating birds fly over Egypt during their journey ?

....

5. Why do many kinds of birds migrate ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can – coral – You – reefs – see – at – the Red Sea.

....

2. travel – a boat – I'll – along – the Nile – in.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You .... [mustn't] finish your homework before going out to play.
2. If you .... [not play] too many video games, you will be healthy.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. some birds can fly very long distances

....

2. what do we need for the trip

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

Guiding elements : • warm water   • snorkel

....
....
....

Test 8 on Unit 10

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are over 450 species of .... in Egypt
   a. birds b. goats c. ducks d. falcons
2. People come on .... to see them.
   a. winter b. vacations c. spring d. fall
3. Siwa .... is a place to see many migrating birds.
   a. Sea b. Park c. Oasis d. Boat
4. They can watch birds from a .... distance.
   a. far b. bad c. near d. safe

[قنا - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٤]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. On eco-tourism vacations, people think about .... [أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤]
   a. shopping b. environment c. movies d. restaurants
2. They go on .... in the desert. [القاهرة - وسط القاهرة ٢٠٢٤]
   a. water b. boats c. diving d. safari
3. The early bird catches the .... [الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤]
   a. turtle b. worm c. snake d. warm

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

eat – flocks – seas – train

Many birds migrate every year from cold places to warmer places. Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large (1) .... of birds such as pelicans near water. These birds often (2) .... fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases and (3) .... [القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Red Sea. It is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. The beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too. It is a great place for bird-watching. Lots of visitors can ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. You can ride .... in Ras Mohammed National Park.
   a. boats b. trains c. planes d. donkeys

2. The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the ....
   a. Dead Sea b. River Nile c. Red Sea d. Lake Nasser

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What can visitors do at the National Park ?

....

4. What is Ras Mohammed National Park famous for ? [القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٤]

....

5. What can you see there ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. we – protect – I think, – should – habitats – animals'. [القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. important – respect – It's – to – nature. [جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠٢٤]

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We .... [must] swim because there might be sharks here. [القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٤]

2. If she .... [feel] cold, she will wear her jacket. [سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤]

7 Punctuate the following.

1. what does this proverb mean, Hana [المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤]

....

2. don't throw trash on beaches [الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٤]

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY [50] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Eco-tourism"

Guiding elements : • sustainable • accommodation

....

.... [القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء ٢٠٢٤-٣]

Test for Al-Azhar students On Unit 10

1 Read and complete the dialogue.

bird - great - scary - meaning - proverb

Walid : Amr, what does this [1] .... mean ?
"The [2] .... who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly."

Amr : It means that you have to try something that seems [3] .... if you want to succeed.

Walid : That's [4] ....

Amr : Yes, proverbs often have more than one [5] ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct one.

1. careful – sensible – person – clever [..................]
2. listen – leave – trash – walk [..................]
3. crocodiles – camp – birds – tigers [..................]
4. photos – restaurants – schools – rooms [..................]
5. ostrich – pelican – kingfisher – protect [..................]

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. Tourists like going .... and diving in the Red Sea to enjoy coral reefs there.
   a. snorkeling b. shopping c. hiking d. sleeping
2. If something is ...., it happens and is true.
   a. false b. real c. wrong d. impossible
3. Many birds .... to and from Egypt every year.
   a. eat b. drink c. sleep d. migrate
4. Don't count your chickens before they ....
   a. fly b. hatch c. eat d. sleep
5. They go on .... in the desert.
   a. water b. rock c. boats d. safari
6. If he .... fast, he will win the race.
   a. runs b. running c. run d. ran
7. We .... respect our teachers.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
8. If we buy a car, we won't .... to school
   a. walking b. walk c. walks d. walked
9. We .... use mobile phones in our classroom during lessons.
   a. mustn't b. must c. should d. can
10. If he .... leave now, he won't catch the bus.
    a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't

4 Reorder.

1. catches – worm – The early – bird – the.
   ....
2. environment – the – Eco-tourists – look – after.
   ....
3. train – win – If – hard, – you – will – you – the race .
   ....
4. must – You – protect – the – wildlife .
   ....
5. important – respect – It's – to – nature.
   ....

5 SB Write an email of Five sentences to your friend Sherin to tell her about a place you would like to visit. Your name is Amal and your email address is amal2002@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sherin2002@hotmail.com.

Guiding elements :

• Red Sea • snorkel • coral reefs • boats • swim

....

UNIT **11**

How can I help?

كيف يمكننى المساعدة ؟

Aims of Unit Eleven : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الحادية عشر :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن العمل الخيرى والتطوع.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- أستخدم مصدر الفعل لتوضيح الغرض.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- أقرأ وأفهم ثلاث نصوص عن أشياء غامضة.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- استمع إلى مقابلة شخصية عن التطوع.
- use -ly and other adverbs.
- استخدم الظروف المنتهية بـ ly- وظروف اخرى.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة عن شقيقين.
- say words containing sh, ch, and tch.
- أنطق الكلمات التى بها sh , ch و tch.
- write a biography of a volunteer.
- أكتب سيرة ذاتية عن متطوع.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen.
- أنشىء منشور عن مواطن جيد.

Lesson 1

Why do you want to help ?

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

charities	جمعيات خيرية	kindergarten	روضة أطفال
vegetable garden	حديقة نباتية	community	مجتمع

Extra vocabulary

skills	مهارات	organization	منظمة
difficult	صعب	paintings	رسومات/ لوحات
particular	خاص - محدد	habitats	بيئات طبيعية
safer	أكثر أمانًا	fresh	طازج
alone	بمفرده	neighbors	جيران

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
donate	يتبرع	donated	join	يلتحق - ينضم	joined
participate	يشارك	participated	decide	يقرر	decided
support	يدعم - يساند	supported	train	يتدرب / يمارس	trained
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take part in	يشارك فى	give something away	يعطى - يتبرع بشىء
at first	فى البداية	a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا
get better	يتحسن	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
help out	يساعد - يمد يد العون	start up	يبدأ
kind to	عطوف مع	after-school club	نادى ما بعد المدرسة

• Did you know ?

• There are charities all over the world that help people, animals and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture and nature.

• هناك جمعيات خيرية تساعد الناس والحيوانات والكوكب فى جميع أنحاء العالم. يساعدوا فى أشياء مختلفة تتضمن التعليم، الصحة، الثقافة والطبيعة.

Study these Definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
support	to do things that help a particular person or group أن تقوم بالأشياء التى تساعد شخص معين أو مجموعة معينة
participate	to take part in something أن تشارك فى شىء
volunteer	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it أن تقوم بوظيفة أو نشاط ولا تتقاضى عليها أى أجر
donate	to give something away to help a person or organization أن تتبرع بشىء لمساعدة شخص أو منظمة

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Community Help project	school - project	- At school, we started a project called Community Help.
	vegetable garden	- Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden.
	volunteered - trash	- Some people volunteered to help clean trash from the river.
	club - skills	- I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min.

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Speaking and writing are important .... in English language.
   a. programs b. devices c. games d. skills

2. Ali was angry because he couldn't .... part in the football match.
   a. pull b. support c. take d. walk

3. We .... hard for the school concert, so everyone liked it.
   a. repaired b. trained c. stored d. wrote

4. Many kids like their .... because they play and learn new things there.
   a. kindergarten b. university c. hospital d. garage

II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

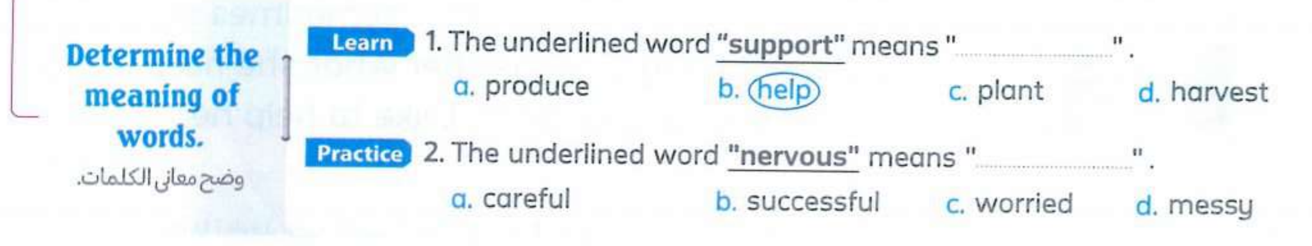
Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after - school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit **nervous** at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children participating.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

مرحبًا أنا تامر. لقد بدأنا مشروعًا فى المدرسة يسمى «مساعدة المجتمع». فقد كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى فى مجتمعنا. وكان هناك أفكار عديدة. على سبيل المثال، كان يريد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة لزراعة الفاكهة والخضراوات الطازجة. وكانت هذه الفكرة محبوبة جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة فى تنظيف النهر من القمامة حتى تكون البيئات التى تعيش فيها الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

أما أنا فقررت أننى أريد مساعدة الأطفال فى مدرستى. أنا أحب الرياضة فلذلك أنشأت نادى ما بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. لقد كنت متوتر بعض الشىء فى البداية ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان أبائهم سعداء. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال. أقوم بالتدريب ايام الأربعاء بعد المدرسة ويستغرق زمن التمرين ٤٥ دقيقة ونقوم بالتدريب واللعب. رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون فى كرة القدم، كانت بمثابة متعة كبيرة لى.



Determine the meaning of words.
وضح معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word **"support"** means "..................".

a. produce   b. (help)   c. plant   d. harvest

Practice 2. The underlined word **"nervous"** means "..................".

a. careful   b. successful   c. worried   d. messy

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Reem

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

ريم

أنا أحب القراءة، لذلك قررت أن أساعد في فصل دراسي لرياض الأطفال يوم الخميس عن طريق القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا. سنبدأ الأسبوع المقبل مشروعًا حيث سيفكر الأطفال في القصص الخاصة بهم. أنا اتطلع لذلك.

Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

إبراهيم

كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي، وكانت في المستشفى. وهي الآن أفضل، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لأنها لم تحب أن تكون هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون من الجيد أن أفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. أنا وأصدقائي رسمنا الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطيء والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هذه الألعاب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لكي تبدو الغرف أجمل.

Mariam

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

مريم

لقد كانت جارتي دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، الآن لقد أصبحت جارتنا أكبر سنًا، وأصبح من الصعب عليها أحيانًا الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك اسألها عما تحتاجه، ثم اذهب إلى المتاجر وأحصل عليه. أحب أن أساعدها.

General Exercises | on Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Reem loves ....
a. swimming b. reading c. writing d. watching TV

2. Reem helps in the .... class on Thursday.
a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. kindergarten

3. The younger children like ....
a. swimming b. running c. reading stories d. candies

4. They're starting up a .... next week.
a. project b. walking c. recycling d. drawing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To .... means to take part in something.
a. leave b. participate c. donate d. watch

2. He always .... money to help people and organizations.
a. records b. controls c. joins d. donates

3. To .... is to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
a. donate b. volunteer c. organize d. look after

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stores – help – older – shopping

I'm Mariam. I love my neighborhood. My neighbor, Walaa, has always been kind to us. She used to (1) .... my mom. When I was younger, she sometimes looked after me. Now she's getting a bit (2) .... , and it's sometimes difficult for her to go (3) .... So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores to buy it. I really like to help her.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project about Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really **popular**. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "..................." .
   a. Playing sports b. Healthy food
   c. Helping the community d. Traveling to new places
2. The underlined word **"popular"** means " ....".
   a. ugly b. familiar c. difficult d. easy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Tamer do to help the community ?

....

4. How can people save animals' habitats ?

....

5. What did they want to grow in the vegetable garden ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sometimes – My mom – helps out – library – at – the school.

....

2. feel – when – I – happy – people – I help.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

1. i like to help my friends

....

2. why do you want to help him

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Helping the community"

Guiding elements :

- volunteer
- support

....

....

....

....

....

....

2

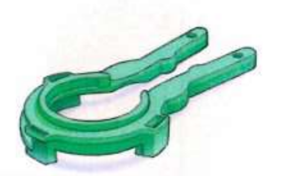
- We use this to pick up the trash
- Language Focus

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

nature camera
كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

grabber
ملقط [أداة لمسك الأشياء]



multi-grip
مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

day center	مركز نهارى	joysticks	عصا التحكم	controller	جهاز التحكم
button	زر [كهربائى]	handle	مقبض	games console	وحدة تحكم فى الألعاب

Extra vocabulary

clean-up	تنظيف	movies	أفلام	photocopy	ينسخ ضوئيًا [ورق]
gloves	قفازات	action buttons	أزرار الحركة	menu	قائمة
metal	معدنى	top	غطاء	exhibition	معرض
project	مشروع	stick	عصى	games	ألعاب
part	جزء	hold	يمسك	essay	مقال
app	تطبيق	wildlife	الحياة البرية	old people	كبار السن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
protect	يحمى	protected	install	يثبت	installed
carry	يحمل	carried	record	يسجل	recorded
collect	يجمع	collected	control	يتحكم	controlled
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	film	يصور [فيلم]	filmed
squeeze	يضغط	squeezed	drop	يلقى	dropped

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the end	في النهاية	under water	تحت الماء
at the top	في القمة	turn ... around	يلتف حول
take off	ينزع - يخلع	on the ground	على الأرض
take ... back to	يرجع - يعيد	turn on	يشغل

Study these Definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
button	is something you press to make something happen هو شيء تضغط عليه لتجعل شيء يحدث
joystick	is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game هو شيء يمكنك تحريكه في اتجاهات مختلفة للتحكم في لعبة كمبيوتر
controller	is something we use to play a computer game هو شيء نستخدمه للعب لعبة كمبيوتر

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Multi - grip	take off	- Old people use multi-grip to take off the tops.
	easy - use	- Multi-grip is really easy to use.
Grabber	pick up- trash	- We use grabber to pick up the trash.
	metal - stick	- It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end.
	squeeze - handle	- The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top.
Nature camera	film - wildlife	- We use the nature camera to film wildlife.
	record - animals	- We record how many animals and birds we see.
Playing video games	controller - game	- We use the controller to play the game.
	button - menu	- We press the home button to take us back to the menu.
	character - actions	- We use action buttons to tell our character to run, jump or do other actions.
	joysticks - move	- The joysticks help us move our character around.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

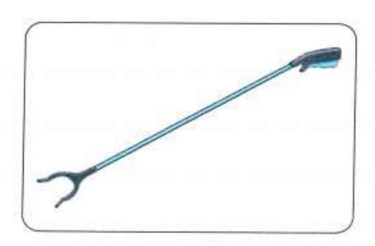
1. A .... is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
   a. grabber b. joystick c. button d. multi-grip
2. A .... is something you press to make something happen.
   a. button b. ball c. jar d. suitcase
3. To keep the garden beautiful, don't .... up the flowers.
   a. volunteer b. record c. control d. pick
4. We couldn't open the door because the .... was broken.
   a. box b. handle c. stick d. screen

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Tamim

grabber



When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

تميم

خطاف / ملتقط

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدى قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التى نجمعها. وانظر! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنها ممتعة فى الاستخدام. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بإصبعين فى نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض فى الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق الاصابع لالتقاط القمامة، ثم نضعها فى الكيس. تقول أمى أنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

multi-grip

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

داليدا

مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

أنا متطوعة فى مركز نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لفتح غطاء تلك الأشياء. هذه هى الطريقة التى تستخدم بها. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضعها فى الأعلى. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقًا سهلة الاستعمال. أحب توضيح هذا للناس فى المركز النهارى.

Hamza

nature camera

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

حمزة

كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع للحياة البرية فى المدرسة، وقد قام معلمى بتركيب اثنين من هذه الكاميرات فى الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلًا. ووضع الأخرى فى شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التى نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

Look and read the description. انظر واقرأ الوصف.

1. People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.

   يستخدم الناس هذا للعب الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه لكى تجد معلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بواجباتك المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك نسخ الأوراق بها.

laptop

2. We use this to play computer games. نحن نستخدم هذا للعب العاب الكمبيوتر.

controller

Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Do you think Amira's mom has played a video game before ? Why / Why not ?
هل تعتقد أن والدة أميرة لعبت لعبة فيديو من قبل؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

Hi Amira. Is this your new games console ? It looks great. What's this part for ?
مرحبًا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو جيدة. ما هو استخدام هذا الجزء؟

Oh, that's the controller. It's what you use to play the game.
أوه، هذه هى وحدة التحكم، هذا ما تستخدميه للعب اللعبة.

Cool! And what does this do ?
رائع! وماذا يفعل هذا؟

That's the home button. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.
هذا هو زر الصفحة الرئيسية. وعندما تضغط عليه يعود بك إلى القائمة.

OK. And what are these buttons for ?
حسنًا. وما هى استخدامات هذه الأزرار؟

Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

تلك هى أزرار الحركة. تستخدمها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجرى أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.

And what are these parts for ?
وما هى استخدامات هذه الأجزاء؟

They're the joysticks. They help you move your character around.
إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.

OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.
حسنًا. إذا ينقلك زر الصفحة الرئيسية إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

That's right. Do you want to play a game with me ?
هذا صحيح. هل تريدى أن تلعبى لعبة معى؟

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. The .... is what we use to play the game.
a. controller b. box c. button d. photo

Practice 2. You use .... to tell your character to run or jump.
a. grabbers b. multi-grips c. cameras d. action buttons

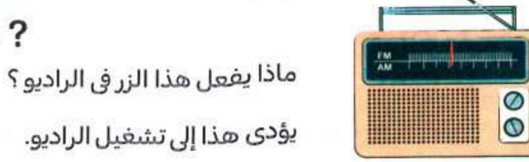
Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1. **What is this part ?** ما هو هذا الجزء ؟

   It's the part that goes over your ears. إنه الجزء الذى يوضع فوق أذنيك.

2. **What is this part for ?** ما استخدام هذا الجزء ؟

   This is the handle. It helps you control where you want to go. هذا هو المقبض. يساعدك على التحكم فى المكان الذى تريد الذهاب إليه.



3. **What does the button on the radio do ?** ماذا يفعل هذا الزر فى الراديو ؟

   This turns on the radio. يؤدى هذا إلى تشغيل الراديو.

4. **What do you use this for ?** فيما يُستخدم هذا ؟

   You use this to swim under water. يمكنك استخدام هذا للسباحة تحت الماء.

III Language Focus

Infinitives of purpose. صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

Usage : الاستخدام

1 We use [to + a verb in the base form"inf."] to explain why we do something.

نستخدم [to + a verb in the base from] لتوضيح لما نقوم بفعل الأشياء.

ex.: - We wear gloves to protect our hands.

2 We also use [to + base form verb] to answer questions with why.

نستخدم [to + base form verb] للإجابة عن الأسئلة بكلمة الاستفهام [Why] بمعنى [لماذا].

ex.: - Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up ?

- To protect my hands.

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Nada wears sunglasses .... (for) protect her eyes. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠٢٤)
2. We go to the station to .... (caught) the bus. (اسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)
3. I picked up the phone .... (for) answer the call.
4. A : .... (How) do we go to school ? B : To learn.
5. I bought a card to .... (sending) to my grandma.
6. Mom is using an app to .... (learning) French.
7. A : Why did you buy some candy ? B : To .... (eating) during the movie.
8. We press this button to .... (turns) on the radio.
9. We use the handle to .... (opening) the fridge.
10. A : Why do you go to the school library ? B : .... (For) read books.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. My uncle went to Cairo .... a friend.
   a. visiting b. visit
   c. visits d. to visit
2. I went to the sports center yesterday to .... volleyball.
   a. plays b. play c. playing d. played
3. A : .... did Sherifa travel by bus ? B : To arrive on time.
   a. How b. What c. Why d. Who
4. Lama painted a picture .... it in the exhibition.
   a. to put b. putting c. put d. puts
5. A : Why did you go to the park ? B : .... see the flowers.
   a. In b. For c. To d. At

General Exercises | on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hamza is doing a/an .... project at school.
   a. wildlife b. engineering c. swimming d. planting
2. The teacher installed two .... cameras in the forest.
   a. plastic b. old c. nature d. human
3. They use cameras to .... wildlife.
   a. damage b. protect c. film d. delete
4. He put the other camera in a tree to film ....
   a. grass b. birds c. flowers d. students

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I wear .... to protect my hands during collecting garbage.
   a. pants b. necklaces c. gloves d. shoes
2. A .... is something we use to open bottles.
   a. grabber b. card c. multi-grip d. joystick
3. We use a .... to collect trash.
   a. fridge b. grabber c. camera d. glass

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ask – write – games – homework

Computers and laptops are very useful. People use laptops to go online and find information on the internet. Students can do their [1] .... on the laptop. They can [2] .... essays on it. On holidays, we can play [3] .... and have fun. We can't photocopy paper with it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Shady. I volunteer at a day center for **old** people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use multi-grips to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put multi-grips on the top. Hold it with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word **"old"** is the opposite of ".................... ".
   a. new b. young c. big d. huge
2. This text is about ".................... ".
   a. Grabbers b. Forests c. Nature cameras d. Multi-grips

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why can't old people open bottles and jars ?

....

4. What do old people use multi-grips for ?

....

5. Where does Shady volunteer ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. lemonade – to – the market – They – in – sell – make.

....

2. by bus – her cousin – see – Sherifa – to – traveled.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. She wears sunglasses .... [for] protect her eyes from the sun.
2. Hany listens to music to .... [relaxing].

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i play volleyball in the sports center

....

2. what do you use this handle for

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY[50] words to your friend Aya about picking up trash. Your name is Nesma. Your email address is nesma@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is aya@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- grabbers
- gloves

From	
To	
Subject	

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- It's good to give back to the community
- Language Focus
- Pronunciation

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

confidence	ثقة	fundraising	جمع التبرعات
reward	جائزة	jealous	غيور
donations	تبرعات	volunteering	تطوع

Extra vocabulary

summer school	مدرسة صيفية	injured	مصاب
interview	مقابلة	life skills	مهارات حياتية
teenager	مراهق	rules	قواعد
abilities	قدرات	broken	مكسور
seed	بذرة	rich	غني
huge	ضخم	sparrow	عصفور
thick	سميك - كثيف	alone	بمفرده
advice	نصيحة	helpful	متعاون
race	سباق	wing	جناح
timetable	جدول	citizen	مواطن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
receive	يتلقى	received	spend	يقضي	spent
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	socialized	give	يعطي	gave
share	يشارك	shared	hear	يسمع	heard
worry	يقلق	worried	grow	ينمو	grew
care	يهتم - يعتني	cared	cut	يقطع	cut
reach	يصل إلى	reached	tell	يخبر	told
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	break	يكسر	broke
reply	يرد	replied	catch	يمسك	caught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

help out in	يساعد في	give back	يرد الجميل
advice for	نصيحة لـ	look after / care for	يعتني بـ
spend time with	يقضي الوقت مع	full of	ملئ بـ
in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية	go back	يعود
fly away	يحلق بعيدًا	ever since / since then	منذ ذلك الحين

Study these Definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
fundraising	collecting money for a charity جمع المال لجمعية خيرية
give back	to help others because you have received so much مساعدة الآخرين لأنك تلقيت الكثير منهم
socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way قضاء الوقت مع الناس بطريقة ودية
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities الشعور بالثقة في قدراتك
jealous	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want الشعور بالتعاسة لأن شخص ما لديه ما تريد
reward	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful شيء تحصل عليه مقابل قيامك بعمل جيد أو تقديم المساعدة

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Volunteering	life skills-volunteer	You learn many important life skills when you volunteer.
	give-confidence	Volunteering gives you confidence.
	fundraising-charities	Fundraising helps charities get the money they need.
Two Brothers, Two Rewards	brothers-different	There were two brothers who were very different.
	older-richest	The older brother was the richest man in the village.
	rich-kind	The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind.
	younger-wing	The younger brother found a bird with a broken wing.
	bird-reward	The bird gave the younger brother a reward.
	jealous	The older brother was jealous when his younger brother became rich.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The charity thanked the old man for his ....
   a. illness b. apartment c. donations d. problems
2. The .... boy was annoyed when his classmate won the prize.
   a. jealous b. friendly c. kind d. brave
3. The teacher gave Nora a nice .... for her hard work.
   a. interview b. treatment c. seed d. reward
4. She likes seeing the .... flying high in the sky.
   a. penguins b. sparrows c. frogs d. pandas

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
• تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read the interview. استمع واقرأ المقابلة.

Presenter : Today we are talking about volunteering in the community. And here is a community volunteer leader, Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

المقدم: نتحدث اليوم عن التطوع في المجتمع. وهنا قائد متطوع مجتمعي. روان إبراهيم. روان، مرحبًا بكِ! هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا كيف بدأتِ التطوع؟

Rawan : I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them and I've volunteered ever since.

روان: بدأت التطوع لأول مرة عندما كان عمري ١٣ عامًا في مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة. بدأت بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار في القراءة والكتابة. أحببت العمل معهم وتطوعت منذ ذلك الحين.

Presenter : Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now, she volunteers in the Summer School Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

المقدم: منذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر ١٦ عامًا في العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية. الآن، تتطوع في مجموعة النشاط المدرسي الصيفي كل صيف. في المجموعة، تساعد روان في أنشطة الأطفال، مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى الحدائق والمتاحف. كما تنظم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجدين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء؟

Rawan : It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

روان: كان الأمر صعبًا في البداية، لكنني كتبت جدولًا زمنيًا لمساعدتي ثم كان الأمر سهلًا. وهذا العام، بدأت التطوع مع Food Box، وهي مؤسسة خيرية تقدم صناديق وجبات صحية للعائلات التي تحتاج إلى المساعدة. أصبحت مهتمة بـ "Food Box" لأن أمي تتطوع هناك.

Presenter : That sounds like difficult, but rewarding work.

المقدم: هذا يبدو عملاً صعبًا ولكنه محفز.

Rawan : Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

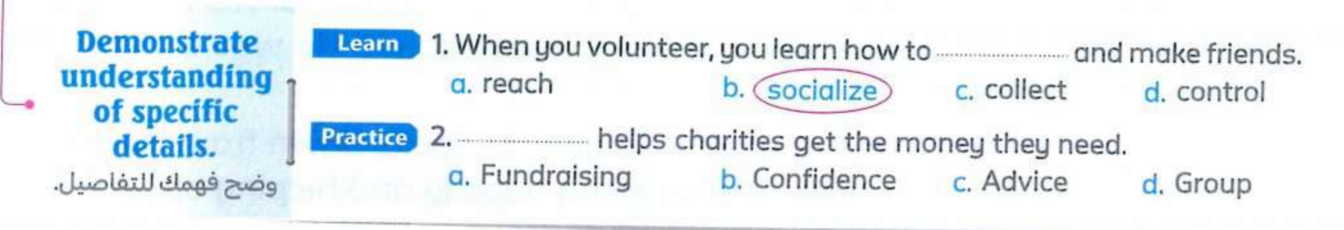
روان: التطوع ليس مثل العمل. إنه ممتع للغاية! في مؤسسة Food Box، أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحي وما الذي يجعل نظامًا غذائيًا صحيًا. أحب تقديم صناديق الطعام الصحية ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين. مساعدة الأطفال تجعلني سعيدةً.

Presenter : Thank you for sharing your experience with us. Do you have any advice for teenagers?

المقدم: شكرًا لك على مشاركة تجربتك معنا. هل لديكِ أي نصيحة للمراهقين؟

Rawan : You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية الهامة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعى والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادةً. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعى الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تزداد ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون العمل التطوعى. يساعد جمع التبرعات المؤسسات الخيرية فى الحصول على الأموال التى تحتاجها. من الجيد أن نرد الجميل للمكان الذى نعيش فيه. نصيحتى للمراهقين هو التطوع والمساعدة إذا استطعت. سوف تستمع به!



Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. When you volunteer, you learn how to .... and make friends.
a. reach b. socialize c. collect d. control

Practice 2. .... helps charities get the money they need.
a. Fundraising b. Confidence c. Advice d. Group

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Two Brothers, Two Rewards

The beginning

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird", he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said , "You can fly away now." First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل فى القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان لطيفًا ويشارك ما لديه مع أصدقائه.

فى أحد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا مكسور الجناح. قال : «لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير». أنا سوف أعتنى بك». لقد كان يعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال : «يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن». قال الطائر : «أولًا، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة. «ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنى بها كما اعتنيت بى».

The middle

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." "He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said," Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهى تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا يحتوى على خضروات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما قطع الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! لقد أصبح الآن أغنى رجل فى القرية !

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. فى اليوم التالى، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. قال : «سأعتنى بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطينى مكافأة» . اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قويًا، قال : الآن أريد مكافأتى». أجاب الطائر الصغير : «هذه هى مكافأتك، ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنى بها جيدًا».

The end

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

ولم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب. والآن، ينظر إلى أسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخيه الأصغر العطوف يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.

III Language Focus

Adverbs ظروف الكيفية

▸ We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.

تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأفعال.

Formation : التكوين

We can make adverbs, by adding (-ly) to most adjectives.

نكون الظرف بإضافة (ly-) إلى معظم الصفات.

ex.: quick ⟶ quickly

▸ **For adjectives that end in a (consonant + y) , add (-ily).**

للصفات التى تنتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، نقوم بإضافة (ily-) بعد حذف حرف (y).

ex.: angry ⟶ angrily

Some adverbs are irregular.

هناك بعض الظروف غير منتظمة ولا تتبع القاعدة وتحفظ كما هى.

ex.: good ⟶ well

▸ **Adverbs normally come after the verb.** عادة يأتى الظرف بعد الفعل.

ex.: She walks slowly.

▸ **Adverbs can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.**

◂ يأتى الظرف قبل أو بعد (الفعل + المفعول) لكن لا يأتى الظرف بين الفعل ومفعول الجملة.

ex.: - She quickly learned the rules. - She learned the rules quickly.

Regular Adverbs ظروف منتظمة	
Adjective	**Adverb**
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة
slow بطئ	slowly ببطء
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة
angry غاضب	angrily بغضب
gentle لطيف	gently بلطف
kind عطوف	kindly بعطف
patient صبور	patiently بصبر
bad سئ	badly بطريقة سيئة
beautiful جميل	beautifully بطريقة جميلة

Irregular Adverbs ظروف غير منتظمة	
Adjective	**Adverb**
good جيد	well جيدًا
fast سريع	fast بسرعة
hard صعب	hard بصعوبة

Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Birds sing .... (beautiful). I love them. (الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢٤)
2. They studied .... (good) for the exam. (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٤)
3. She volunteered .... (happy) at the children's day center.
4. The dog was hungry, and it ate the food .... (quick).
5. The teacher spoke .... (angry) because I was late.
6. She practiced .... (good), so she played the piano beautifully.
7. Can you speak .... (quiet), please ?
8. My grandparents always help me .... (kind).
9. The bus driver .... (patient) waits for me every morning.
10. I did .... (bad) in the last exam.
11. He carries his baby brother .... (gentle).

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. They donated a lot of money .... to our charity.
   a. kindly b. kindness c. kinds d. kind
2. He plays football very ....
   a. good b. bad c. well d. slow
3. I can run very ....
   a. the fastest b. fast c. faster d. fastest
4. The tortoise walked .... , but she could beat the rabbit.
   a. slowly b. slower c. slow d. slowest
5. They .... decorated their house for the party.
   a. beautiful b. beautifully c. more beautiful d. beauty
6. The mechanics work .... to fix the old cars.
   a. the hardest b. harder c. harder than d. hard

General Exercises | on Lesson 4

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. artic _ _ | 2. tunn _ _ | 3. music _ _ | 4. vehic _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

write - parts - magazines - vehicle - keyboard

Computers are very important in our life today. There are different (1) .... of computers. The (2) .... is an important part. Writers use the keyboard to write (3) .... and newspapers. We can use the keyboard to (4) .... texts on computers.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. We .... in the park at 7 o'clock yesterday.
a. were sitting b. was sitting c. sitting

2. They .... listening to the guide.
a. was b. were c. is

3. Mom and dad .... making breakfast yesterday morning.
a. was b. were c. have

4. The children were .... in the garden.
a. play b. playing c. plays

B. 1. He was .... a vehicle.
a. driving b. drives c. drive

2. Dad .... reading a newspaper.
a. doesn't b. wasn't c. didn't

3. What .... you doing at 5 pm yesterday ?
a. are b. do c. were

4. She was .... to the news.
a. listening b. listens c. listen

4 Read, order and write.

1. can - a vehicle - A camel - drive!

....

2. you - the article - Did - read ?

....

Lesson 5

• CLIL : Making newspapers

I Vocabulary

journalist	صحفى	editor	محرر
layout specialist	متخصص التخطيط	production	إنتاج
print	يطبع	metal plate	لوح معدنى
The printing press	المطبعة	pack	يعبئ
distribution	التوزيع		

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
distribution	is packing newspapers and sending them to shops يقوم بتعبئة الصحف وإرسالها إلى المحلات
a journalist	is the person who finds out important things that are happening and writes about them هو الشخص الذى يكتشف الأشياء المهمة التى تحدث ويكتب عنها
an editor	is the person who decides what stories go into a newspaper هو الشخص الذى يقرر الأخبار التى يتم نشرها فى الجريدة
the printing press	is where newspapers are printed هو المكان الذى يتم فيه طباعة الجريدة
a layout specialist	is the person who decides what the newspaper should look like هو الشخص الذى يقرر الشكل التى تبدو عليه الجريدة

II Listening and Reading

Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

How are newspapers made ? كيف تصنع الصُحف؟

Making a newspaper is very hard work. Journalists, editors and layout specialists have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, advertising, production, and distribution.

إعداد صحيفة هو عمل شاق جدًا. يتعين على الصحفيين والمحررين والمتخصصين فى التخطيط أن يعملوا بسرعة كبيرة كفريق واحد لتجهيز الصحيفة بأكملها فى يوم واحد. المجالات الخمسة التى يجب أن تعمل معًا هى الأخبار، القصص، الإعلان، الإنتاج والتوزيع.

1. News

Journalists find out the important and exciting things that are happening every day. Some journalists work in the local area of a town or city. Others can travel all over the world. They try to learn as many facts as they can about an event and interview people who know about it. Then, they write the news story and send it to the editor.

١. الأخبار

يكتشف الصحفيون الأشياء المهمة والمثيرة التى تحدث كل يوم. يعمل بعض الصحفيين فى المنطقة المحلية لبلدة أو مدينة ما. يمكن للآخرين السفر فى جميع أنحاء العالم. يحاولون معرفة أكبر عدد ممكن من الحقائق حول حدث ما وإجراء مقابلات مع الأشخاص الذين يعرفون عنه. ثم يكتبوا قصة الأخبار و يرسلونها إلى المحرر.

2. Stories

Lots of newspapers have articles and stories about general events. These can give people's opinions about the news and events that are happening in the world.

٢. القصص

تحتوى الكثير من الصحف على مقالات وقصص حول الأحداث العامة. يمكن أن تعطى آراء الناس حول الأخبار والأحداث التى تحدث فى العالم.

3. Advertising

Lots of people read newspapers, so it is a good place for businesses to advertise. Newspapers need to have advertisements in them because they make money from selling space on the page. All the advertisements have to be ready on time to go in the newspaper.

٣. الإعلان

يقرأ الكثير من الناس الصحف، لذا فهى مكان جيد للشركات للإعلان. تحتاج الصحف إلى وجود إعلانات فيها، لأنها تكسب المال من بيع المساحات على الصفحة. يجب أن تكون جميع الإعلانات جاهزة فى الوقت المحدد لنشرها فى الصحيفة.

4. Production

When the files are ready, they are sent to the printing press. The pages of the newspaper are made into an image on a thin metal plate. Then big rolls of paper go through machines over the metal plates. The newspaper is printed! The printers work all night and make lots of copies of the newspaper. Some modern printers can make 70,000 copies an hour!

٤. الإنتاج

عندما تكون الملفات جاهزة، يتم الإرسال إلى المطبعة. تتكون صفحات الجريدة من صورة موضوعة على لوح معدنى رفيع. ثم تمر لفات كبيرة من الورق عبر الآلات فوق الألواح المعدنية. الصحيفة مطبوعة ! تعمل الطابعات طوال الليل وتقوم بعمل نسخ كثيرة من الجريدة. يمكن لبعض الطابعات الحديثة عمل ٧٠،٠٠٠ نسخة فى الساعة!

5. Distribution

The newspapers are packed overnight and they are sent to shops all over the country for people to buy in the morning.

٥. التوزيع

تعبأ الصحف طوال الليل وترسل إلى المحلات التجارية في جميع أنحاء البلد ليشتريها الناس في الصباح.

Answer the following Question :

Learn 1. Why do newspapers need to have advertisements in them ?
- Because they make money from selling space on the page.

Practice 2. When do the printers work ?
- ....

Look, read and learn. انظر ، اقرأ وتعلم.

Steps to make a newspaper

خطوات إعداد جريدة

1 Journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly to get the newspapers ready.

الصحفيون والمحررون والمتخصصون في التخطيط عليهم أن يعملوا بسرعة لتجهيز الجرائد.

2 When the files are ready, they are sent to the printing press.

عندما تكون الملفات جاهزة يتم إرسالها إلى المطبعة.

3 The newspapers are packed overnight.

تُعبأ / تحزم الصحف ليلًا.

4 The newspapers are sent to shops all over the country for people to buy it in the morning.

يتم إرسال الصحف إلى المتاجر عبر البلد ليشتريها الناس في الصباح.

Writing skill Descriptive paragraphs فقرات إنشائية وصفية

What are descriptive paragraphs ?

When you write a descriptive paragraph, describe the things you can see and feel. Write general sentences, more information and an end sentence.

- عندما تكتب فقرة إنشائية وصفية، أوصف الأشياء التي تستطيع رؤيتها والشعور بها. اكتب جمل عامة، معلومات أكثر وجملة ختامية.

Steps to write a descriptive paragraph خطوات كتابة فقرة إنشائية وصفية

1. Spend some time thinking of the topic of your paragraph.
   - اقض بعض الوقت من التفكير في موضوع فقرتك الإنشائية.
2. Write down all details that come to your mind. - اكتب كل التفاصيل التي تتبادر إلى ذهنك.
3. Arrange the details to follow a logical order. - رتب التفاصيل لتتبع ترتيبًا منطقيًا.
4. Write a topic sentence, supporting details and a concluding sentence.
   - اكتب جملة افتتاحية وتفاصيل داعمة وجملة ختامية.
5. Try to link each sentence to the one that comes before or after it.
   - حاول ربط كل جملة بالعبارة التي تأتي قبلها أو بعدها.

Example :

Picture

Paragraph

Journalists, editors and layout specialists have to work very quickly to get the newspapers ready. When the files are ready, they are sent to the printing press. They are packed overnight. They are sent to shops all over the country.

General Exercises | on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A.

facts – town – travel – Journalists – want

I want to be a journalist. (1)........................ find out the important and exciting things that are happening every day. Some journalists work in the local area of a (2)........................ or city. Others can (3)........................ all over the world. They try to learn as many (4)........................ as they can about an event.

B.

shops – newspaper – layout – printing – packed

Journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly to get the (1) .... ready in one day. When the files are ready, they are sent to the (2) .... press. The newspapers are (3) .... overnight. The newspapers are sent to (4) .... all over the country.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Making a newspaper is very hard work. Journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, advertising, production, and distribution.

Lots of people read newspapers, so it is a good place for businesses to advertise. Newspapers need to have advertisements in them because they make money from selling space on the page. All the advertisements have to be ready on time to go in the newspaper.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Making a newspaper is very .... work.
   a. easy b. hard c. bad
2. All the advertisements have to be ready on time to go in the ....
   a. newspaper b. school c. hospital

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who have to work as a team?

....

4. Why do newspapers need to have advertisements in them?

....

5. Why are newspapers a good place for businesses to advertise ?

....

6. Why do journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly ?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. He was .... to school yesterday morning.
   a. walk b. walking c. walked
2. Mona .... sitting by the flowers in the park.
   a. was b. were c. has
3. It .... raining heavily at night yesterday.
   a. was b. is c. were
4. The tennis players were .... the ball very hard.
   a. hits b. hitting c. to hit

4 Read, order and write.

A.

1. packed - The newspapers - overnight - are.

....

2. made - How - newspapers - are ?

....

B.

1. specialists - Layout - arrange - the news.

....

2. have - articles - Newspapers - stories - and.

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 - 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Steps to make a newspaper

Guiding elements :

- journalists
- printing press
- packed

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 6

• CLIL : Media : Sources of news

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Extra vocabulary

main	أساس	updated - live	متجدد / محدث - مباشر
report	تقرير	radio presenter	مذيع إذاعى
newsreader	مذيع الأخبار	events	أحداث
useful	مفيد	straight away	على الفور
source	مصدر		

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Newspapers and social media are .... of news.
   a. events b. facts c. sources
2. I like reading sports articles in the ....
   a. radio b. TV c. newspaper
3. Journalists write about important ....
   a. fruits b. events c. songs
4. I like listening to radio .... every morning.
   a. presenters b. feelings c. medals

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Where do we get our news from ? من أين نحصل على أخبارنا ؟

Why is it good to be able to learn the news quickly ?

لماذا من الجيد أن تكون قادرًا على معرفة الأخبار بسرعة ؟

Journalists travel all over the world to report the news, and we can get the news from lots of different places.

1. Newspapers ١- الصحف (الجرائد)

I'm Bella. My parents buy a newspaper every day.
They read the main news stories and lots of other articles.
There is news about sports, too. It's very interesting and there is a lot to read.

2. TV news ٢- أخبار التلفزيون

I'm Adam. In our family, we watch the news on television. It is live - it is happening at the same time as we watch it. The news can sometimes change very quickly, and on TV, we can find things out straight away. Newsreaders present the news and we can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.

3. Radio news ٣- أخبار الراديو

I'm Gameela. My mom likes listening to the news on the radio when she is in her car or at home. The radio presenters explain everything very clearly. Sometimes, people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio program. It's interesting, but I like listening to music in the car!

4. Social media ٤- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

I'm Aser. My older sister reads the news on her phone. It is updated very quickly, and you can find out what different people think about a news story.
Sometimes people can share stories on social media that aren't true, so it's useful to know where a story comes from.

- يسافر الصحفيون إلى جميع أنحاء العالم لتغطية الأخبار ويمكننا الحصول على الأخبار من الكثير من الأماكن المختلفة.
- أنا بيلا. يشترى والداى جريدة كل يوم. يقرأون القصص الإخبارية الرئيسية والكثير من المقالات الأخرى. هناك أخبار عن الرياضة أيضًا. إنها ممتعة للغاية ويوجد بها الكثير للقراءة.
- أنا آدم. فى عائلتنا، نشاهد الأخبار على التلفزيون وهى مباشرة - إنها تحدث فى نفس الوقت الذى نشاهده فيه. يمكن أن تتغير الأخبار فى بعض الأحيان بسرعة كبيرة ويمكننا على التلفزيون أكتشاف الأشياء على الفور. يقدم مذيع الأخبار، الأخبار ويمكننا مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو من أماكن مختلفة فى جميع أنحاء البلاد والعالم.
- أنا جميلة. تحب أمى الاستماع إلى الأخبار فى الراديو عندما تكون فى سيارتها أو فى المنزل. يشرح مذيعى الراديو كل شئ بوضوح شديد. فى بعض الأحيان يمكن للناس الاتصال على الهاتف وطرح الأسئلة أو التحدث عما يفكرون به فى برنامج اذاعى. إنه ممتع. لكننى أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى فى السيارة!
- أنا آسر. تقرأ أختى الكبرى الأخبار على هاتفها. يتم تحديثها بسرعة كبيرة جداً ويمكنك معرفة ما يعتقده الأشخاص المختلفون حول قصة إخبارية. فى بعض الأحيان يمكن للناس مشاركة قصص غير صحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. لذلك من المفيد معرفة مصدر القصة.

General Exercises | on Lesson 6

1 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

events – watching – television – world – cut

I'm Aser. We always watch the news on (1) .... The newsreaders read stories from around the (2) .... We like (3) .... interviews with people and videos of (4) ....

2 **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

I'm Menna. I buy a newspaper every day. I like reading the main news stories. My parents like reading different people's opinions on the news. So, they read the news on social media. They sometimes check the facts on the television news to make sure that they are true. My older sister reads the news on her phone. It is updated very quickly, and you can find out what different people think about a news story.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Menna's parents read the news on ....
   a. television b. social media c. the radio
2. Menna's parents check the facts on the .... news.
   a. phone b. tablet c. television

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Menna buy every day?

....

4. What does Menna like reading?

....

5. What do Menna's parents like?

....

6. Who reads the news on the phone?

....

3 **Read, order and write.**

1. buy - My parents - newspaper - a - every day.

....

2. share - People - on - stories - media - social.

....

4 **Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 – 4) sentences using guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Radio news

Guiding elements :

• listen • presenter • program

....
....
....
....

Lesson 7

• Reading : Be an editor !

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

space	الفضاء	scientist	عالِم
champions	أبطال	medicine	دواء
discovery	اكتشاف		

Extra vocabulary

illness	مرض	exploration	استكشاف
against	ضد	flood	فيضان
return	عودة	win	فوز - انتصار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
return	يعود	returned
discover	يكتشف	discovered
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

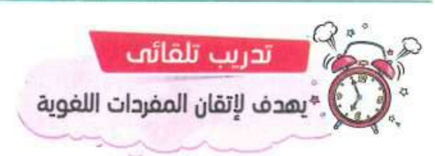
Irregular

Present		Past
fight	يحارب	fought
speak	يتحدث	spoke
win	يفوز	won

Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• at the university	في الجامعة	• heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة
• come back	يعود	• We're so happy.	نحن سعداء جدًا.
• fight against	يحارب ضد	• protect from	يحمي من

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The doctor gave .... to the patient.
   a. bricks   b. medicine   c. plants
2. There're planets in the ....
   a. schools   b. space   c. sea
3. We should protect ourselves from ....
   a. newspapers   b. illnesses   c. books
4. They .... the match because they played well.
   a. lost   b. won   c. slept
5. Heavy rain can cause ....
   a. flood   b. illness   c. medicine

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Read and identify some news stories.** اقرأ وتعرف على بعض القصص الإخبارية.

1 Rain, Rain, Rain

There were problems in Madrid and Barcelona today after heavy rain. There were floods in parts of the cities and cars were damaged ...

حدثت مشاكل فى مدريد وبرشلونة اليوم بعد هطول أمطار غزيرة. وشهدت أجزاء من المدن فيضانات ولحقت أضرار بالسيارات ...

2 Space Discovery

Scientists at the university have spoken about their exciting work in space exploration. "We think we have found a new planet, about the same size as Earth," said Dr Fahmy ...

تحدث العلماء فى الجامعة عن عملهم المثير فى استكشاف الفضاء. قال الدكتور فهمى : نعتقد أننا وجدنا كوكبًا جديدًا، بنفس حجم الأرض تقريبًا...

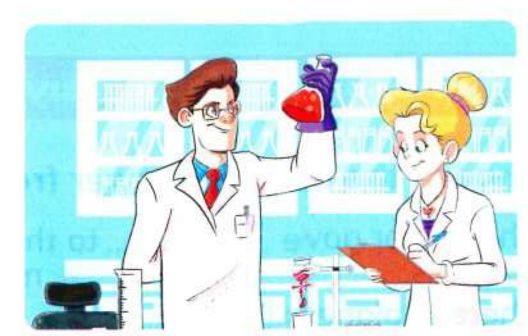
3 Return of the Champions!

The Women's Soccer Team came back yesterday from their competition in France. They won all three of their matches. I spoke to the team captain. "We're so happy," she said ...

عاد فريق كرة القدم النسائى أمس من منافسه فى فرنسا. لقد فازوا بجميع مبارياتهم الثلاث. لقد تحدثت إلى قائد الفريق. قالت : "نحن سعداء للغاية".

4 A Win for Medicine

Doctors and scientists celebrated today after a new medicine was discovered to protect from heart disease. "This will really help our fight against dangerous illnesses" said Dr Hassan ...



احتفل الأطباء والعلماء اليوم بعد اكتشاف دواء جديد يقى من أمراض القلب. قال الدكتور حسن : سيساعد هذا حقًا فى مكافحتنا للأمراض الخطيرة.

General Exercises | on Lesson 7

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. cam _ _ | 2. hospit _ _ | 3. artic _ _ | 4. music _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sad - heavy - damaged - street - floods

There were problems in Barcelona today. There were [1] .... in parts of the cities. The floods happened after [2] .... rain. The cars were [3] .... There was too much water on the [4] ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. .... you playing tennis after school yesterday ?
a. Was b. Were c. Are

2. He was .... a wildlife program about lions.
a. watching b. watch c. watches

3. Sherif was .... in the park.
a. walking b. walk c. walks

4. Are radios .... for listening to music programs ?
a. to use b. uses c. used

B. 1. There .... problems in my city yesterday.
a. was b. were c. is

2. Doctors and scientists .... their discovery.
a. celebrated b. celebrates c. celebration

3. Journalists are .... about their exciting work.
a. speak b. speaks c. speaking

4. My friends were .... soccer at 7 yesterday.
a. playing b. plays c. played

4 Read, order and write.

1. were - of - the cities - There - in parts - floods.

....

2. a new - They - planet - found - space - in.

....

Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (١٣ جملة).

1 Newspaper

At newspaper, the advertisement tells you about something you might want ta buy[1]. The byline tells you who wrote a story[2]. Sports give us information about competitions and games[3].

2 Making newspapers

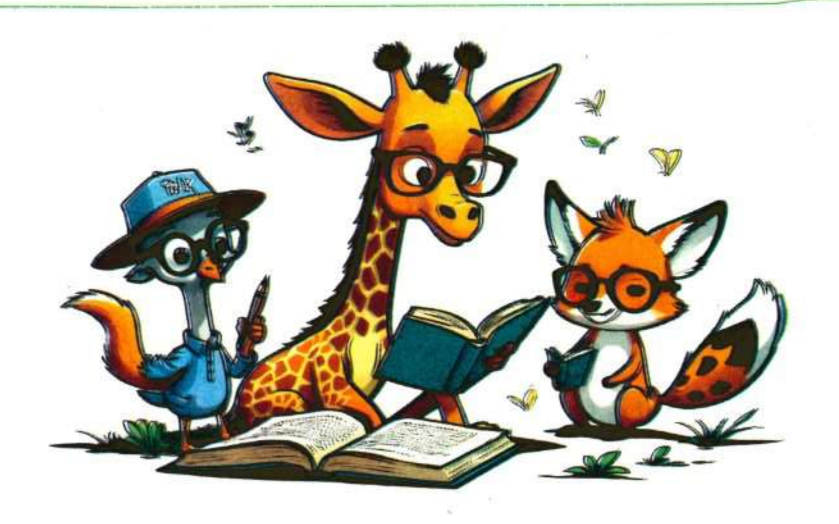
Making a newspaper is very hard work[4]. Journalists, editors and layout specialists have to work very quickly as a team to get the whole newspaper ready in one day[5]. The five areas that have to work together are news, stories, advertising, production and distribution[6].

3 Sources of news

There are many sources of news such as newspapers, TV news, radio news and social media[7]. We can watch the news on television[8]. We can listen to news on the radio[9]. Some news in social media aren't true[10].

4 Journalists

Journalists find out the important things that are happening every day[11]. Journalists can travel all over the world[12]. Some journalists work in the local area of a town or city[13].



◂ هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل
ليساعدك علـى التمكن من مهـارة القـراءة والكتـابـة

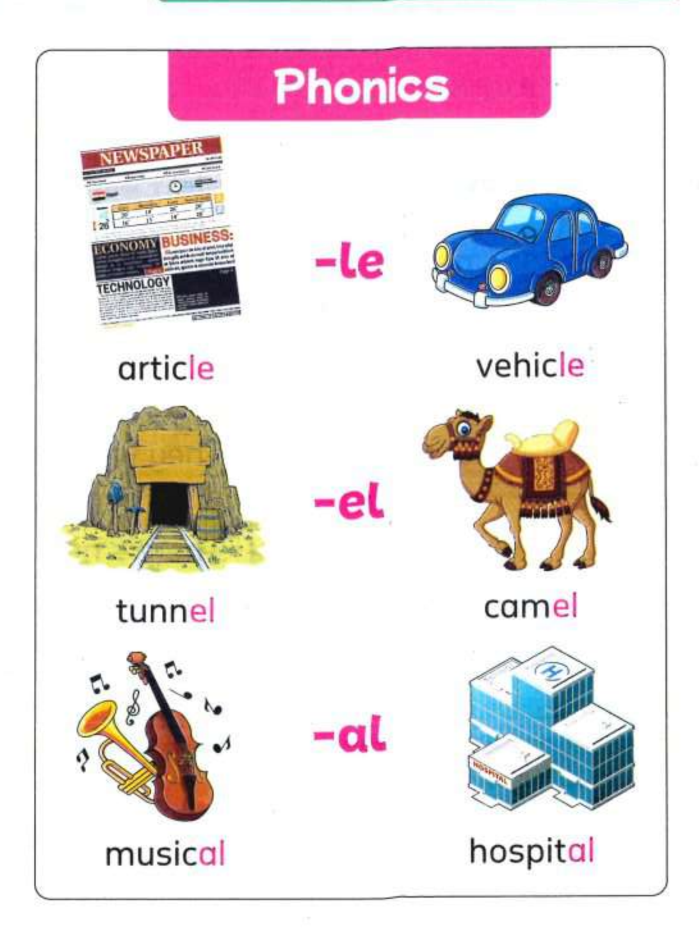
Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
School newspaper	newspaper	The children helped to make the school newspaper.
	interviewed	They interviewed the headteacher.
	article	They wrote an article about learning computer.
	news - community	There's news about their school and their community.
	photo-hospital	There's a photo about the new hospital.
Journalists	things	Journalists find out the important and exciting things that are happening every day.
	local area	Some journalists work in the local area of a town or city.
	travel	Journalists can travel all over the world.
	facts	They try to learn as many facts as they can about an event.
	interview	They interview people about the events.
	news-editor	They write the news story and send it to the editor.
TV news	television	We watch the news on television.
	watch	It's live - it's happening at the same time as we watch it.
	news-quickly	The news can sometimes change very quickly.
	straight away	On TV, we can find things out straight away.
	newsreader	Newsreaders present the news.
	watch videos	We can watch videos from different places around the country and the world.

Review | on Unit 12 Community connections

Vocabulary

Phonics



Language

- He was walking in the park.
- They were walking in the park.
- Why were you traveling on the bus yesterday ?
- Was he answering questions about it ?
- He wasn't looking where he was going.

Media

There are four sources of news :

- newspapers
- TV news
- radio news
- social media

• Help your child review unit 12.

- ساعد طفلك فى مراجعة الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Sample Test on Unit 12

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. music _ _ | 2. vehic _ _ | 3. tunn _ _ | 4. hospit _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Journalists – work – heavy – day – world

I want to be a journalist. Journalists find out the important things that are happening every (1) .... (2) .... can travel all over the (3) .... Some journalists (4) .... in the local area of a town or a city .

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Bella. I'm from France. I like listening to the news on the radio. My parents buy a newspaper every day. They read the main news stories and lots of other articles. There is news about sports, too. It's very interesting and there is a lot to read. My friend Adam watches the news on television. It is live; it is happening at the same time as we watch it.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The news on .... is live.
   a. television b. radio c. cell phone
2. Bella's parents read the main news ....
   a. stories b. weather c. reports

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Bella from ?

....

4. Who watches the news on television ?

....

5. What do Bella's parents buy every day ?

....

6. What does Bella like doing ?

....

4 The Reader

"The end"

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. The girls looked at •	[ ] a. a prize.
	[ ] b. lots of animals.
2. Nesma and Laila won •	[ ] c. the other inventions.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The girls were busy talking about the inventions. [ ]
2. There's a machine that can help a farmer get water to lots of animals. [ ]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We were .... on plastic chairs in our science class.
   a. sit   b. sitting   c. to sit
2. The children weren't .... fish and rice.
   a. cooking   b. cooks   c. cook
3. She .... running on the track.
   a. was   b. were   c. are
4. My friends weren't .... for the school bus.
   a. waits   b. wait   c. waiting

6 Read, order and write.

1. do - get - news - Where - we - from ?

....

2. news - There's - sports - about .

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3 - 4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Sources of news

Guiding elements :

• news   • radio   • stories

....

....

....

Review 4 | General Revision on Units 10,11&12

مراجعــــة عامـــة علـــى الوحـــدات ١٠،١١ و ١٢

I Important Vocabulary

Unit 10

needle	إبرة	south	جنوب	speed	سرعة
compass	بوصلة	direction	اتجاه	contact force	قوة التلامس
magnetic field	مجال مغناطيسى	balance	توازن	movement	حركة
poles	أقطاب	magnetism	مغناطيسية	handle	مقبض
magnet	مغناطيس	friction	احتكاك	rub out	يزيل / يمحى
adventure	مغامرة	push	يدفع	smooth	ناعم / أملس
navigate	يتنقل	bandage	ضمادة طبية	X-ray	أشعة سينية
attract	يجذب	danger	خطر	MRI scan	فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسى
north	شمال	bounce	وثب / ارتداد		

Unit 11

telegraph	تلغراف	wider screen	شاشة أوسع	keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح
radio	راديو / مذياع	code	شفرة / رمز	horse and cart	حصان وعربة
typewriter	آلة كاتبة	machine	آلة / ماكينة	straw	عصا (شاليموه)
telephone	هاتف أرضى	mouse	فأرة	pause	توقف
television	تلفزيون	printer	طابعة	steam train	قطار بخارى
laptop	حاسب محمول	monitor	شاشة	subway	مترو الأنفاق
World Wide Web	شبكة الإنترنت العالمية	external hard drive	قرص صلب خارجى	central processing unit (CPU)	وحدة المعالجة المركزية

Unit 12

headline	عنوان	advertisement	إعلان	layout specialist	متخصص التخطيط
byline	بقلم	interview	مقابلة شخصية	production	إنتاج
article	مقال	race	سباق	the printing press	المطبعة
caption	تعليق	track	ميدان سباق	newspapers	جرائد
weather	الطقس	vehicle	مركبة / عربة	TV news	أخبار التلفاز
sports	رياضة	journalist	صحفى	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
cartoons	كاريكاتير (رسوم متحركة)	editor	محرر		

II Language

Unit 10 — First conditional " IF "

Statements If + subj. + present simple , subj. + will/ won't + inf. .... .

If they watch this video, they 'll learn about magnets.

Questions Will + subj. + inf. ... if + subj. + present simple ... ?

If + subj. + present simple, will + subj. + inf. ... ?

Will the bell make a sound if I pull the string ?

Wh - word + will + inf. + if + subj. + present simple ... ?

What will happen if I drop the pencil ?

Unit 11 — The Present Simple Passive :

Statements Object. + am / is / are + p.p. + [by + sub.] → • Videos on the internet are seen by many people.

The Past Simple Passive :

Statements Object. + was / were + p.p. + [by + sub.] → • Radios were used for listening to music.

Unit 12 — The Past Continuous Tense

Statements Subj. + was / were / wasn't / weren't + inf. + ing. .... → • My dad was reading a newspaper.

Questions Was / Were + subj. + inf. + ing. + ... ?

Were you playing tennis after school yesterday ?

Wh-word + was / were + subj. + inf. + ing. + ... ?

What was he doing at 10:00 yesterday ?

NON-FICTION READER

The Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصرى الكبير

Vocabulary

statue تمثال

builder عامل بناء

pharaoh فرعون

staircase سلم / درج

treasure كنز

replica نسخة مطابقة للأصل

gallery معرض/ صالة عرض

tourist سائح

Some artifacts in the Egyptian Museum

Tutankhamun's tomb مقبرة توت عنخ آمون

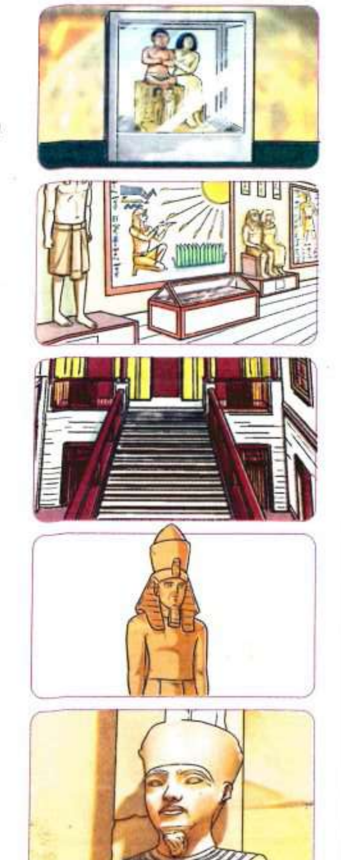
Tutankhamun's mask قناع توت عنخ آمون

the Palette of Narmer لوحة نارمر

the Merneptah Stele مسلة مرنبتاح

statue of Ramses II تمثال رمسيس الثانى

Some information



1. We can see objects in a display case .

يمكننا أن نرى الأشياء فى صالة العرض.

2. There are lots of display cases in this gallery.

هناك الكثير من صالات العرض فى هذا المعرض.

3. This staircase takes you up to other galleries.

يأخذك هذا الدرج (السلم) إلى صالات عرض أخرى.

4. This statue of Ramses II is 11 meters tall and over 3,000 years old.

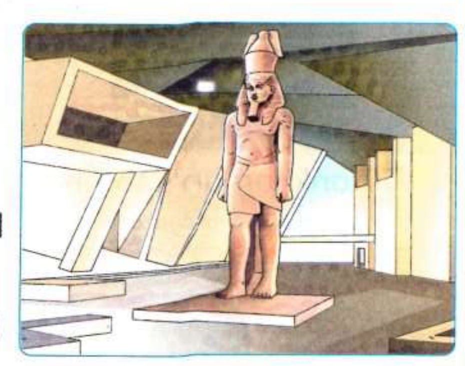
يبلغ ارتفاع تمثال رمسيس الثانى 11 مترًا وعمره أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ عام.

5. A replica is a copy of an original artifact.

النسخة المتماثلة هى نسخة من قطعة أثرية أصلية.

- **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Why was the Grand Egyptian Museum built ?



The Grand Egyptian Museum is a very exciting, new museum in Giza. It is one of the largest museums in the world. It's around 490,000 m^2, and the central room is big enough to put an airplane inside. There is a huge statue of Ramses II in that room. It arrived at the museum in January 2018. The builders of the museum built a large room around it. There are many more statues of pharaohs displayed on the Great Staircase. From the museum, there is also an incredible view of the Pyramids. The Egyptian Museum in the center of Cairo wasn't big enough to show all the amazing treasures from Egypt's history. Some of the display cases were old.

لماذا تم بناء المتحف المصرى الكبير ؟

المتحف المصرى الكبير هو متحف جديد مثير للغاية فى الجيزة. إنه أحد أكبر المتاحف فى العالم. تبلغ مساحته حوالى ٤٩٠ ألف متر مربع، والغرفة المركزية كبيرة بما يكفى لوضع طائرة بالداخل. يوجد تمثال ضخم لرمسيس الثانى فى الغرفة. وصل إلى المتحف فى يناير ٢٠١٨. بنى بناة المتحف حوله غرفة كبيرة. هناك العديد من تماثيل الفراعنة المعروضة على الدرج العظيم. من المتحف هناك أيضًا منظر رائع للأهرامات. لم يكن المتحف المصرى فى وسط القاهرة كبيرًا بما يكفى لعرض جميع الكنوز المدهشة من تاريخ مصر. كانت بعض صالات العرض قديمة.

The new museum building has modern display cases which can keep the artifacts at the right temperature so they are safe. There are over 100,000 artifacts inside the new museum, and over 3,000 treasures from Tutankhamun's tomb. The four rooms of Tutankhamun's original tomb were quite small - only 110 m^2. The new museum has a replica of the four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb, and much bigger galleries to display the treasures in the same order as they were found. There are also photos of the time when people first explored the tomb.

There are video tours that you can watch online. These show you some of the artifacts, as well as some of the different galleries and parts of the building. Many tourists from all over the world want to visit this amazing, new museum.

- **Look and identify.** انظر وتعرف .

There are lots of incredible artifacts in the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.

يوجد الكثير من القطع الأثرية الرائعة بالمتحف المصرى بالقاهرة.

What is it ? Tutankhamun's mask.
How old is it ? Over 3,000 years old.
What is it made of ? Gold.
How tall is it ? About 54 cm tall.

ما هذا ؟ قناع توت عنخ آمون.كم عمره؟ حوالى أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ سنة.مما هو مصنوع ؟ الذهب.كم يبلغ طوله ؟ حوالى ٥٤ سم.

What is it ? The Palette of Narmer.
How old is it ? Over 5,000 years old.
What is it made of ? Green schist stone.
How high is it ? About 63,5 cm high.

ما هذا ؟ لوحة نارمر.كم عمرها ؟ حوالى أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ سنة.مما هى مصنوعة ؟ حجر الشست الأخضر.كم يبلغ ارتفاعه ؟ حوالى ٦٣,٥ سم.

What is it ? The Merneptah Stele.
How old is it ? Over 3,000 years old.
What is it made of ? Granite.
How high is it ? Over 3 meters high.

ما هذا ؟ مسلة مرنبتاح .كم عمرها ؟ حوالى أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ سنة.مما هى مصنوعة ؟ من الجرانيت.كم ارتفاعها ؟ حوالى أكثر من ٣ أمتار.

يحتوى مبنى المتحف الجديد على صناديق عرض حديثة يمكنها الحفاظ على القطع الأثرية فى درجة الحرار ة المناسبة لذلك فهى (القطع الأثرية) فى آمان. يوجد أكثر من ١٠٠,٠٠٠ قطعة أثرية داخل المتحف الجديد، وأكثر من ٣٠٠٠ كنز من مقبرة توت عنخ آمون. الأربع غرف الخاصة بمقبرة توت عنخ آمون الأصلية كانت صغيرة الى حد ما بمساحة ١١٠ مترًا مربعًا. يحتوى المتحف الجديد على نسخة طبق الأصل من أربع غرف فى مقبرة توت عنخ آمون، وصالات عرض أكبر بكثير لعرض الكنوز بنفس الترتيب الذى تم العثور عليها فيه. هناك أيضًا صور لحدث اكتشاف الناس للمقبرة لأول مرة. هناك جولات فيديو يمكنك مشاهدتها عبر الإنترنت. تعرض لك بعض القطع الأثرية، بالإضافة إلى بعض المعارض المختلفة وأجزاء من المبنى. يرغب العديد من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ان يزوروا هذا المتحف الجديد المذهل.

General Exercises on Non-fiction reader

1 A. Read and match.

(A)	(B)
1. The Grand Egyptian Museum	a. were old.
2. Some of the display cases in the Egyptian museum	b. in January.
	c. is in Giza.

B. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. The builders of the museum built a large hospital around the statue of Ramses II.
2. Tutankhamun's mask is made of gold.

2 A. Read and match.

(A)	(B)
1. The four rooms of Tutankhamun's original tomb	a. the largest museums in the world.
2. The Grand Egyptian Museum is one of	b. watch online.
	c. were quite small.

B. **Read and write Yes or No.**

1. The central room in the Grand Egyptian Museum is small. (..................)
2. Many tourists from all over the world want to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. (..................)

3 A. Read and match.

(A)	(B)
1. The new museum building	a. you can see the Pyramids.
2. From the Grand Egyptian Museum,	b. has modern display cases.
	c. inside the new museum.

B. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. In the large room, you can see a portrait of Ramses II.
2. There are many statues of Pharaohs displayed on the Great Staircase.

4 A. Read and match.

[A]		[B]
1. The Egyptian Museum is	•	☐ a. the central room.
2. There is a huge statue of Ramses II in	•	☐ b. in the center of Cairo.
		☐ c. explored the tomb.

B. Read and write Yes or No.

1. The new museum has a replica of the four rooms of Tutankhamun's tomb.

[........................]

2. The modern display cases can keep the artifacts at the right temperature.

[........................]

Fiction Reader

Nesma's Invention

اختراع نسمة

Story Map

خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصيات

Nesma

Laila

Nesma's mom

Nesma's father

Nesma's grandma

Judges

The setting المكان

places أماكن

at home

at school

event الحدث

a competition for the best invention.

Story plot حبكة القصة

Beginning

- Nesma saw an advertisement about a competition.
- Nesma wanted to be an inventor.
- Laila encouraged Nesma to take part in the competition.
- Nesma thought about an idea for the competition.

Middle

- Nesma looked at books and websites for ideas.
- Nesma's grandma used to be an inventor.
- Nesma had an idea to complete her grandma's invention.

End

- Nesma is going to use the idea of magnet.
- Laila helped Nesma to complete the upside down car invention.
- Nesma and Laila have won a prize.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور

frame إطار

judges مُحَكِّمين/قضاة

inventor مخترع

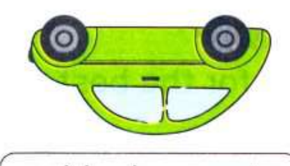
motor موتور

earthquake زلزال

prize جائزة

solar panels ألواح شمسية

spring زنبرك

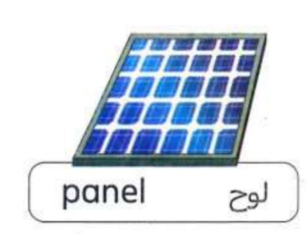


upside down مقلوب

newsletter نشرة الأخبار

brilliant عبقري

solar energy طاقة شمسية



panel لوح

note مفكرة

science equipment أدوات العلوم

Vocabulary

advertisement	إعلان	websites	مواقع الكترونية	competition	مسابقة	sat down	جلس
medal	ميدالية	travel up walls	تنتقل على الحوائط	communicate	يتواصل	inventions	اختراعات
invent	يخترع	rescue workers	عمال إنقاذ	diary	مفكرة	amazing	مدهش
drawings	رسومات	science lessons	دروس العلوم	letter	خطاب	take part	يشارك
vehicle	مركبة						

• **Study these definitions.**

ادرس تلك التعريفات.

Word	Definition
solar panel	This changes energy from the sun into electricity.
spring	a long thin wire in a tight circle. It can move and store energy.
upside down	The top is turned to the bottom.
wire	It's a strong, thin piece of metal.
newsletter	It's a short written report.
invention	It's something completely new that has just been thought of.
take part	To take part in something means to join.
navigate	To navigate is to decide which direction a ship or a car should go in.
brilliant	Someone who is brilliant is very clever.
solar energy	Solar energy is energy produced using the sun.
panel	This is a piece of material made to form part of a surface.
note	These are a few words written down to help you remember something.
science equipment	These are things that we use for a science experiment.

1 The beginning
بداية القصة

Nesma wants to be an inventor. تريد نسمة أن تصبح مخترعة.

Nesma was reading the school newsletter when she saw an advertisement. There was a competition for the best invention."Look, Laila," said Nesma. "This looks fun. I want to be an inventor!"

- كانت نسمة تقرأ النشرة المدرسية عندما رأت إعلانًا. أنه هناك مسابقة لأفضل اختراع. قالت نسمة " انظرى يا ليلى يبدو هذا رائعًا. أريد أن أكون مخترعة!"

"You should take part" said Laila. "You'd be really good." "Look! If we win a medal, we'll get some science equipment for our school. "That's a brilliant prize!" said Nesma.

- قالت ليلى : "يجب أن تشاركى" ستكونين حقًا جيدة". قالت نسمة انظرى! إذا فزنا بميدالية، سوف نحصل على بعض أدوات العلوم لمدرستنا. " تلك جائزة رائعة! "

Nesma prepares for the competition. نسمة تجهز للمسابقة.

- Nesma loved inventing things. She thought about the competition as she walked home. What could she make? She could invent a toy, a vehicle, or something to communicate with people. She didn't know what to make, but she knew she wanted to take part.

- احبت نسمة اختراع الأشياء. فهى كانت تفكر فى المسابقة أثناء سيرها للمنزل. ماذا يمكنها أن تصنع ؟ يمكنها أن تخترع لعبة ، مرّكبة أو شئ ما للتواصل مع الناس. فهى لم تعرف ماذا تصنع، لكن عرفت أنها تريد أن تشارك.

- At home, Nesma sat down. She looked at books and websites for ideas. There were so many amazing inventions! How could she do something new ?
She took out her pens and paper, and started to draw. It was difficult.

- فى المنزل، جلست نسمة. نظرت فى الكتب والمواقع الإلكترونية عن أفكار. كان هناك العديد من الاختراعات الرائعة (المدهشة)! كيف تقوم بعمل شئ جديد ؟
أخذت أقلامها والورق وبدأت ترسم. كان الأمر صعبًا.

Grandma's note gave Nesma the idea of the invention.

ملاحظة الجدة أعطت نسمة فكرة الاختراع.

• Nesma worked for a long time, but she couldn't get her ideas right. Her dad came home from work.'That looks interesting,Nesma, 'he said. 'What is it ? 'Oh, it's a competition at school. I don't think I'll take part. I can't think of anything to make.' Dad sat down. 'Show me your ideas,' he said.

- ظلت نسمة تعمل لوقت طويل، ولكن لم تستطيع أن تحصل على أفكار صائبة. عاد والدها للمنزل من العمل. قال لها "هذا يبدو ممتعًا، يا نسمة. ما هذا ؟ "أوه، إنها مسابقة فى المدرسة. لا اعتقد أننى سوف أُشارك. لا أستطيع أن أفكر فى أى شئ لأصنعه. جلس الأب وقال لها "اعرضى على أفكارك".

• Nesma showed him the papers and drawings, but she was sad. She didn't think her ideas were very good. For a long time,her dad didn't say anything. Then he smiled at her. "You know, Nesma, I know someone who used to make drawings and inventions like this". He stood up and went out of the room.

- عرضت نسمه عليه الأوراق والرسومات ولكنها كانت حزينة. لم تعتقد أن أفكارها جيدة. ولم يقل والدها أى شئ لمدة طويلة. ثم ابتسم لها وقال :" انتِ تعرفين يا نسمه انى اعرف شخص ما اعتاد على عمل رسومات واختراعات مثل ذلك". وقف [الوالد] وخرج من الغرفة.

Grandma's plans for a vehicle خطط الجدة لصنع مركبة.

- When he came back, he was carrying an old box. "This box has lots of things that used to belong to my mom,"he said. "This was Grandma's ? " asked Nesma. She looked at the box. There were letters and a diary, drawings and photos. Grandma used to be an inventor, too!

- عندما عاد كان يحمل صندوقًا قديمًا وقال :"هذا الصندوق به الكثير من الأشياء التى اعتادت ان تخص أمى" سألت نسمه : "هل هذا كان يخص جدتى ؟ " ونظرت إلى الصندوق، كان به خطابات، مفكره يوميه، رسومات وصور الجدة اعتادت أن تكون مخترعه أيضًا !

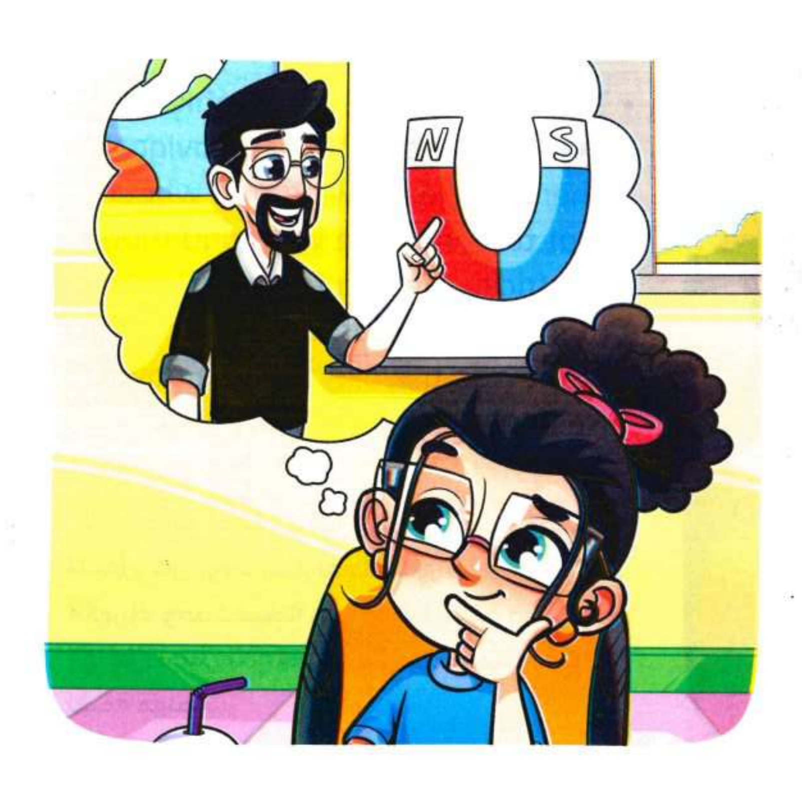
- There were plans for a vehicle that used a compass to navigate. There was a drawing of a wheel that turned in the wind and made electricity. Nesma found a drawing of a small toy car. It was on a track, but it was traveling upside down. Nesma was interested.

- كانت هناك خطط لمركبة التى تستخدم البوصلة للتنقل. كان يوجد رسم لعجلة تدور فى الهواء وتولد الكهرباء. وجدت نسمة رسمًا للعبة سيارة صغيرة. إنها على مسار، لكن كانت تنتقل بوضع مقلوب. كانت نسمة مهتمة.

Nesma has an idea. نسمة لديها فكرة.

- She read Grandma's note under the picture.'I tried to make a car that could travel up walls and upside down. This would be amazing. If there was an earthquake, roads might be damaged. Buildings might fall down and make it hard to drive. We could use this car and make a track above the ground. Rescue workers could travel in dangerous places to help people. But I couldn't find a way to make the car stay on the track.'

- قرأت نسمة ملاحظة جدتها أسفل الصورة. " لقد حاولت أن أصنع سيارة يمكنها التنقل على الجدران وبوضع مقلوب. هذا سيكون مدهشًا. إذا كان هناك زلزال، ربما تُدمَّر الطرق. ربما تسقط المبانى وتجعل من الصعب القيادة. يمكننا أن نستخدم هذه السيارة ونجعل المسار على الأرض. فعمال الإنقاذ كان يمكنهم التنقل فى الأماكن الخطرة لمساعدة الناس. لكن لم استطع أن أجد طريقة لأجعل السيارة تبقى على المسار.



- As Nesma looked at the plan, she had an idea. She was learning about magnets in science lessons at school. Would that work ?

- بينما كانت نسمة تنظر إلى الخطة، توصلت إلى فكرة فهى كانت تتعلم عن المغناطيسات فى دروس العلوم فى المدرسة. هل هذا الأمر سينجح ؟

General Exercises on "The beginning"

1 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma wants to be	a. a vehicle.
2. Nesma could invent	b. a teacher.
	c. an inventor.

B. Read and write T(True) or F(False) :

1. Nesma was reading an advertisement for the best invention. ☐
2. Nesma wanted to take part in the school competition. ☐

2 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Laila wanted Nesma	a. some science equipment.
2. The prize will be	b. saw advertisement.
	c. to take part in the competition.

B. Read and write Yes or No :

1. Nesma looked at books and websites for ideas. [..............]
2. Nesma's dad tried to help her. [..............]

3 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma was reading	a. the newsletter.
2. Nesma loved	b. was difficult.
	c. inventing things.

B. Read and write T(True) or F(False) :

1. Nesma's dad was carrying an old box belonged to Grandma. ☐
2. There will be a competition for sports at school. ☐

4 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma looked at books and websites	a. plans for a vehicle.
2. Inside the box, there were	b. an old box.
	c. for ideas.

B. Read and write Yes or No :

1. Nesma didn't love inventing things. [..............]
2. Nesma worked for a long time to get ideas. [..............]

2 The Middle
منتصف القصة

Nesma works hard to achieve her invention. تعمل نسمة بجد لتحقيق (لإنجاز) إختراعها.

- The next day, Nesma told Laila her idea."That sounds great ! Can I help ?" said Laila. "Yes please!" said Nesma. Nesma showed Laila her plans. "We need some thin wood for a track, and a long, thin magnet to go under it. We need a small car to go on the track, with a magnet in it." "I'll get the wood!" said Laila. "Great! I'll get some magnets."

- في اليوم التالى، أخبرت نسمة ليلى بفكرتها. قالت ليلى "يبدو هذا رائعًا! هل يمكننى مساعدتك ؟ قالت نسمة "نعم من فضلك!". - وضحت نسمة لليلى خططها. قائلة "نحن نحتاج إلى خشب رفيع لعمل المسار ومغناطيس طويل ورفيع ليوضع أسفله" نحتاج سيارة صغيرة لتنتقل على المسار المثبت به المغناطيس قالت ليلى : "سوف أحضر الخشب!". "رائع ! سوف احصل على بعض من المغناطيس".

- The two girls worked hard. They made a frame for the car to travel on. They stuck the long magnet to the frame, and the small magnet to the car to keep it on the track. The car had a little spring inside it. Nesma pulled the car back, then took her hand off it. The energy from the spring turned the wheels. The car moved along the track, but it didn't travel very far."Why isn't it traveling ? " asked Laila. Nesma thought. She was worried. "It isn't fast enough," she said.

- عملا الفتاتين بجد. فصنعوا إطارًا لتنتقل عليه السيارة. وقاموا بلصق مغناطيس طويل على الإطار ومغناطيس صغير بالسيارة لإبقائها على المسار. كان بالسيارة زنبرك صغير بداخلها. سحبت نسمة السيارة للخلف، ثم نزعت يدها عنها. فالطاقة من الزنبرك حركت العجلات. تحركت السيارة على طول المسار لكنها لم تنتقل بعيدًا. سألت ليلى "لماذا لا تنتقل ؟" فكرت نسمة وهى قلقة و قالت " إنها ليست سريعة بما يكفى".

Nesma's mom helps her to make her invention والدة نسمة تساعدها فى صنع اختراعها

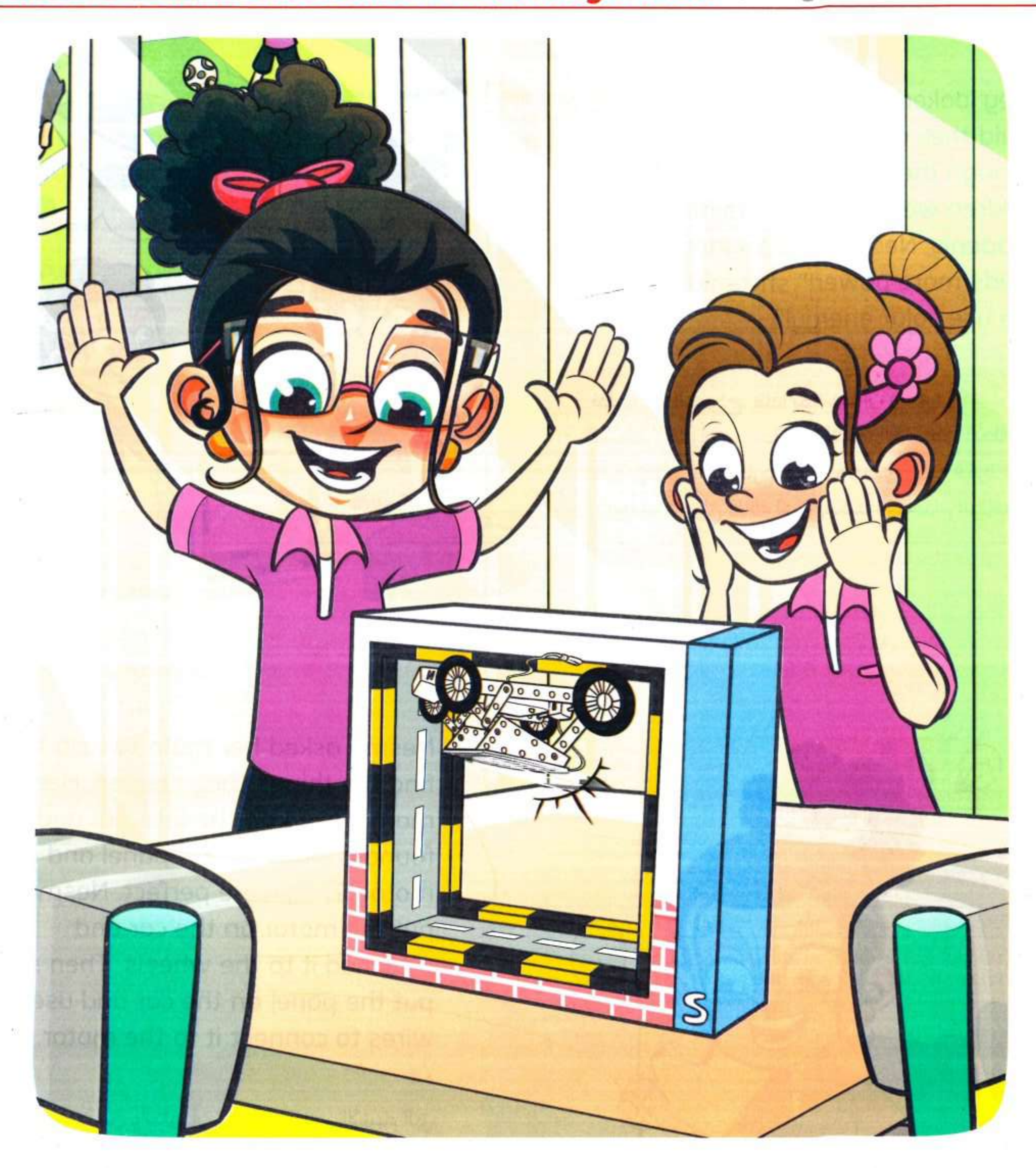
- They looked at the model. What could they do ? The sun was shining through the window, and lots of children were playing outside. Suddenly, Nesma had an idea. "It needs more power!" she said. "We can use solar energy!"

- نظروا إلى النموذج. ماذا يمكنهم أن يفعلوا ؟ كانت الشمس تشرق من خلال النافذة والكثير من الأطفال كانوا يلعبون فى الخارج. فجأة، وجدت نسمة فكرة. فقالت : "إنها تحتاج إلى طاقة أكبر! يمكننا استخدام الطاقة الشمسية!"

- Nesma asked her mom to help her find the things they needed. Her mom looked on the internet and found a small, cheap panel and a motor .They were perfect. Nesma put the motor on the car and attached it to the wheels. Then she put the panel on the car and used wires to connect it to the motor.

- طلبت نسمة من والدتها أن تساعدها لتجد الأشياء التى يحتاجونها. بحثت والدتها عبر الإنترنت ووجدت لوحة شمسية صغيرة ورخيصة ومحرك. لقد كانوا جيدين. وضعت نسمة المحرك على السيارة وربطته بالعجلات. ثم وضعت اللوحة على السيارة واستخدمت أسلاك لتوصيلها بالمحرك.

Laila and Nesma succeeded in inventing the car ليلى ونسمة نجحوا في اختراع السيارة



- The friends tried again. They put the car in the sun, then started the motor. It worked! They watched happily. The car traveled along, up, and upside down! 'It's so clever! Well done, Nesma,' said Laila. 'Thank you for helping! It's fantastic.'

- حاولتا الصديقتين مرة أخرى . فوضعوا السيارة في الشمس، ثم قاموا بتشغيل المحرك. لقد نجحت! فراقبوا بسعادة. السيارة تسير صعودًا ورأسًا على عقب [مقلوبة]! قالت ليلى : "هذا بارع جدًا ! أحسنت يا نسمة !"قالت نسمة، "شكرًا لك للمساعدة ! هذا رائع".

General Exercises on "The middle"

1 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Laila wanted	a. they can use solar energy.
2. Nesma decided that	b. to help Nesma's mom.
	c. to help Nesma.

B. **Read and write T(True) or F(False) :**

1. Nesma asked her mom for help. ☐
2. The sun was shining through the window. ☐

2 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma stuck the long magnet	a. to the frame.
2. The girls used solar	b. to the motor.
	c. energy for more power.

B. **Read and write T(True) or F(False) :**

1. Nesma put the motor on the car. ☐
2. The two girls used wires to connect the car to the motor. ☐

3 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. The car had	a. for the car.
2. Nesma and Laila made a frame	b. for the train.
	c. a little spring inside it.

B. **Read and write Yes or No :**

1. Nesma asked her dad for help. [..............]
2. Nesma showed Laila her plans. [..............]

4 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma's mom found a motor	a. travel along, up, and upside down happily.
2. The girls watched the car	b. on the internet.
	c. the spring turned the wheels.

B. **Read and write Yes or No :**

1. The energy from the spring turned the wheels. [..............]
2. The two girls put the car in the sun. [..............]

3 The End
نهاية القصة

Nesma got the prize. حصلت نسمة على الجائزة.

- On Thursday, the girls were at the competition. There were lots of children from schools around the city. 'Are you excited?' asked Laila. 'Yes, but I'm nervous, too,' said Nesma. They looked at the other inventions. There were some amazing ideas and models.

- كانت البنات فى المسابقة يوم الخميس. كان هناك الكثير من الأطفال من المدارس فى أنحاء المدينة. سألت ليلى "هل انتِ متحمسة ؟" ردت نسمة "نعم ولكنى متوترة أيضًا". نظروا إلى الاختراعات الأخرى. كان هناك بعض الأفكار والنماذج المدهشة.

- "Look, there's a model of a house that uses wind to keep warm." "And there's a machine that can help a farmer get water to lots of animals." "There are some great inventions here. I'm happy we came, " said Nesma. "I'll write a diary about it when I get home, just like my grandma!"

- انظرى، هناك نموذج لمنزل يستخدم طاقة الرياح ليبقى دافئًا. وهناك آلة يمكن أن تساعد المزارع فى إيصال الماء إلى كثير من الحيوانات. يوجد بعض الاختراعات العظيمة هنا. قالت نسمة «أنا سعيدة بمجيئنا». «سأكتب مذكرات عن ذلك عندما أصل إلى المنزل تمامًا مثل جدتى!».

Nesma and Laila have won a prize. نسمة وليلى فازوا بالجائزة.

- The girls were busy talking about the inventions. They didn't see the judges standing next to them. They were looking at the model car and smiling. "Well done!" said the judges, and the girls looked at them. There was a medal on their car ! "We've won a prize!" said Laila.

- كانت الفتيات منشغلات بالحديث عن الاختراعات. فلم يروا الحكام الواقفين بجوارهم. كانوا ينظرون إلى نموذج السيارة ويبتسمون. قال الحكام ونظر الفتيات إليهم : " أحسنتم صنعًا! " كان هناك ميدالية على سيارتهم ! قالت ليلى : "لقد فزنا بالجائزة!"

General Exercises on Story

1 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma invented	☐ a. was on Thursday.
2. The competition	☐ b. on a school newsletter.
	☐ c. a car that moves on walls.

B. Read and write T(True) or F(False) .

1. Nesma thought about the birthday party as she walked home. ☐
2. Nesma drew some ideas for an invention on paper. ☐

2 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Laila helped Nesma	☐ a. the model car and smiled.
2. The judges looked at	☐ b. on the internet.
	☐ c. build a car and a track.

B. Read and write Yes or No .

1. Nesma's mom found a solar panel online. (..............)
2. Nesma used thin wood to make a frame. (..............)

3 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma and Laila won	☐ a. in science.
2. Nesma was learning about magnets	☐ b. in math.
	☐ c. the competition.

B. Read and write T(True) or F(False) .

1. The two girls put the car in the water, then started the motor. ☐
2. The prize of the competition was science equipment. ☐

4 A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. The old box belongs to •	☐ a. her ideas to her dad.
2. Nesma showed •	☐ b. needs more power.
	☐ c. Nesma's grandma.

B. Read and write Yes or No .

1. At first, the car wasn't fast enough. [..............]
2. Laila and Nesma worked together to make the car move. [..............]

5 A. Read and match .

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma's dad showed her •	☐ a. an inventor.
2. Nesma's grandma used to be •	☐ b. a vet.
	☐ c. a box belonged to her Grandma.

B. Read and write T[True] or F[False] .

1. Nesma thought that magnet could make the car stay on the track. ☐
2. Nesma wanted to invent a plane to help people in the earthquake. ☐

6 A. Read and match .

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma's grandma couldn't find a way •	☐ a. the school newsletter.
2. Nesma and Laila won •	☐ b. a brilliant prize.
	☐ c. to make the car stay on the track.

B. Read and write T[True] or F[False] .

1. Nesma's grandma tried to make a car that could travel up walls and upside down. ☐
2. Nesma showed her ideas to her grandma. ☐

Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 7

Lesson 4

- Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. jewel 2. glue 3. blue 4. new

General Exercises on Lesson 4

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. cube 2. flew
3. true 4. flute

General Exercises on Lesson 5

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. blue 2. new
3. June 4. glue

Sample Test on Unit 7

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. flute 2. jewels
3. blue 4. cube

Unit 8

Lessons 3&4

- Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. measure 2. adventure
3. pleasure 4. sculpture

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. sea creatures 2. treasure
3. sculpture 4. adventure

Sample Test on Unit 8

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. creature 2. sculpture
3. pleasure 4. measure

Unit 9

General Exercises on Lesson 3

Listen and write the missing sounds.

A. 1. sea 2. where
3. write 4. plane

B. 1. wear 2. flower
3. right 4. hear

Sample Test on Unit 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. plain 2. where
3. see 4. here

Sample Test on Units 7, 8 & 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. glue 2. June
3. sculpture 4. write

Unit 10

General Exercises on Lesson 7

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. bandage 2. village
3. danger 4. giraffe

Sample Test on Unit 10

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. bandage 2. giraffe
3. change 4. energy

Unit 11

Lessons 4&5

- Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. audio message 2. draw
3. short 4. Morse Code

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. short 2. pause
3. yawn 4. straw

Sample Test on Unit 11

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. draw 2. pause
3. short 4. yawn

Unit 12

Lesson 4

- Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hospital 2. camel
3. tunnel 4. article

General Exercises on Lesson 4

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. article 2. tunnel
3. musical 4. vehicle

General Exercises on Lesson 7

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. camel 2. hospital
3. article 4. musical

Sample Test on Unit 12

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. musical 2. vehicle
3. tunnel 4. hospital

Answers of Topics | إجابات الموضوعات

Unit 7

General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"Life stages"

Each of life stages is interesting. A baby can't talk or walk. A toddler learns a lot about the world. An adult can walk, run, jump and swim.

General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3 :

"What I used to do"

I used to ride a bike when I was six. I didn't use to be able to swim, but now I can. I didn't use to take the bus to school.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 :

"My family"

I have a big family. My father always goes to work and looks after us. My mother buys me a new present on my birthday. I always go to the park on weekends with my sister. I love my family.

General Exercises on Lesson 5 :

"Identical twins"

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers. Twins often think and behave in similar ways.

General Exercises on Lesson 6 :

"Rabbits"

A litter of newborn rabbits looks very different from their parents. As they get older, the rabbits in a litter will grow similar to each other, but not identical. The offspring have inherited some traits from their parents.

General Exercises on Lesson 7 :

"Rainforest plants"

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are a lot of plants in the rainforest. Some plants have drip tip leaves. Other plants use bright colors to attract insects. Rainforest trees are very tall and have wide roots.

Sample Test on Unit 7 :

"How plants adapt"

Plants are living organisms, and they also reproduce and adapt. There are tall trees in the rainforest, cactus plants in the desert and water lilies in ponds. They are all different and they adapt to their environment in amazing ways.

Unit 8

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2 :

"A visit to a museum"

Yesterday, we went on a school trip to a museum. There were lots of things to see in the museum. We saw jewelry, artifacts and statues. It was an amazing trip.

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4 :

"Learning about the past"

I like seeing things in museums. I can really understand what things were like in the past when I see ancient artifacts. We can learn more about our culture by understanding our past.

General Exercises on Lesson 5 :

"Ancient Egyptian art"

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Archaeologists have found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the Pharaohs. Paintings in tombs often showed pictures of the Ancient Egyptians' lives. They made small models of boats, animals and people in tombs.

General Exercises on Lesson 6 :

"Shading"

Shading is one of the most important things to learn. To make a picture look three - dimensional, you can use shading. Shading makes a picture look interesting and real.

General Exercises on Lesson 7 :

"Geometric patterns"

A geometric pattern is made of lots of shapes. People use geometric shapes in art to create patterns. Geometric shapes can create abstract patterns. These can be very beautiful.

Sample Test on Unit 8 :

"Archaeologists"

I'm interested in the past and I think artifacts from the past are interesting. I want to be an archaeologist. Archaeologists study artifacts to learn more about the past. Archaeologists have also found lots of important artifacts in tombs.

Unit 9

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2 :

"Hospitals"

A hospital is a place where people can go for treatment. At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. Doctors and nurses at the hospital help sick people get better.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

"School rules"

At school, we must listen to our teachers. We must keep our class clean. We mustn't make fun of our classmates. We mustn't talk unless we raise our hands.

General Exercises on Lesson 6 :

"Doctors"

Doctors are very important. They work hard to help patients get better. Doctors wear face masks to protect their patients. They can put medicine in a patient's body with a syringe. They also can put bandages on a patient to help a cut or injury get better.

General Exercises on Lesson 7 :

"Medicine in the past"

Doctors in the past used different medicines, but some of their ideas are useful today. They used herbs to treat some diseases. They also used honey to treat infections and skin problems.

General Exercises on Lesson 8 :

"Flying doctors"

The flying doctors are pilots as well as doctors. They can help with emergencies or injuries and they can fly people to a hospital. It is much quicker than traveling by road.

Sample Test on Unit 9 :

"Hospital rules"

We must follow some rules in the hospital. We mustn't have more than three visitors. We mustn't play loud music in the hospital. Patients must get lots of rest.

Sample Test on Units 7, 8 & 9 :

"Adaptation in animals"

All animals adapt to their environment to survive. The penguin can swim a long way underwater to catch fish. The cuttlefish can change color with its surroundings, so it can hide from predators. The finch has a large beak so it can eat lots of different seeds. The lizard has adapted to look like a leaf, so other animals don't eat it.

Unit 10

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2 :

"Magnets"

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south pole. The south pole attracts the north pole. The same poles repel. A magnetic field is an area around a magnet.

General Exercises on Lessons 4,5 & 6 :

"Forces"

A force is something that can make things move. Pushing, pulling and friction are contact forces. A push force moves an object away or forwards. A pull force brings an object towards you.

General Exercises on Lesson 7 :

"My village"

I live in a nice village. In my village, there are lots of animals. My favorite animal is my cat. My cat likes playing and climbing the trees. I also like cows and goats there.

General Exercises on Lessons 8 & 9 :

"Uses of magnets"

Magnets are useful at home and at school. We can use magnets in medicine, farming, factories and computers. For example, in hospitals, an MRI scan uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organ inside our bodies.

Sample Test on Unit 10 :

"The uses of magnets in farming"

Cows eat grass, but they sometimes eat bits of metal that are on the ground in fields, such as nails or bits of wire. Farmers give cows a magnet to swallow. The magnet stays inside the cow's stomach and attracts all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's digestive system.

Unit 11

General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3 :

"Telegraph machine"

The first way of sending messages was the telegraph machine. Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called telegrams. In telegrams, important information was written and read quickly. They were written in Morse Code.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5 :

"Parts of a computer"

Computers are very important inventions. Mouse, printer and keyboard are parts of a computer. Central processing unit [CPU] is the brain of the computer. It makes the computer follow instructions.

General Exercises on Lesson 6 :

"Transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Horse and cart is an old-fashioned type of transportation. Airplanes and trains are forms of transportation for long journeys. High-speed train is a modern type of transportation.

Sample Test on Unit 11 :

"Pros of transportation"

Transportation is very important. It helps us move from one place to another. It has a lot of pros. Bikes don't cause pollution and they are cheap. Buses have lots of room for our bags. Buses are also comfortable. We can see the country when we're traveling by car. And we can travel at the time that suits us.

General Exercises on Lesson 1 :

"Our school newspaper"

Boys and girls in my school helped to make our school newspaper. There is news about our school and community in it. There is an interview with our headteacher in it. My friend Noha made a cartoon for the back page. Our school newspaper looks really interesting.

General Exercises on Lesson 5 :

"Steps to make a newspaper"

Journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly to get the newspaper ready. When the files are ready, they are sent to the printing press. The newspapers are packed overnight. They are sent to shops all over the country for people to buy.

General Exercises on Lesson 6 :

"Radio news"

We can listen to the news on the radio when we are in the car or at home. The radio presenters explain everything very clearly. Sometimes people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio program. It's very interesting.

Sample Test on Unit 12 :

"Sources of news"

We can get news from different sources. Newspapers, TV, radio, and social media are sources of news. My father likes buying a newspaper every day to read the main news stories. My mother likes listening to news on the radio.

Interactive

By a group of supervisors

Homework Notebook

الصف الثالث الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الثانى

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

CONNECT Plus

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى

دليـل ولـى الأمـر

Parents' Guide

3rd Primary 2025

SECOND TERM

CONTENTS

PART 1 | El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

PART 2 | A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

PART 1

El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى (التسميع)

Part One

Dictation on Lessons

١ - إملاء على دروس الوحدة

٢- أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة

Part 1 UNIT 7 Dictation & Writing Assessments

I Dictation on lesson 1

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
elderly person	elde_y p_son	ledelyr srpeon	
adult	ad_t	dalut	
teenager	te_na_r	regtenae	
child	_ld	cldih	
toddler	to_ler	todelrd	
baby	ba_	abby	

Part Two

Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation

Units 7, 8, 9, 10 & 11

Units 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 & 12

Complete — Unscramble — Write

Part 1

UNIT 7

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lesson 1

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
baby	ba__	abby	
toddler	to__ler	todelrd	
child	__ild	cldih	
teenager	te_na__r	regtenae	
adult	ad__t	dalut	
elderly person	elde__y p__son	ledelyr srpeon	

Dictation on lessons 2 & 3

Read	computer	glasses	skateboard	climb	ride	paint
Complete	com__t_r	_lasse_	sk_t_bo_rd	cli__	r_d_	pa__t
Unscramble	mpetcour	ssaglse	rtesbakaod	miclb	edri	niapt
Write						

Dictation on lesson 4

Read	jewel	flew	flute	cube	glue	true
Complete	je__l	f__w	_lu_e	c_b_	_lue	tr__
Unscramble	w e l e j	e f l w	e l f u t	c b u e	e u g l	t e r u
Write						

Dictation on lesson 5

Read	twins	triplets	quadruplets	different	similar
Complete	t_i_s	t_ip__ts	q__druple__	di__er__t	s_m_la_
Unscramble	nwtis	erlptist	tudlpuqraes	tdferifne	rlaiism
Write					

Dictation on lessons 6 & 7

Read	wetland	polar	bulb	water lily	date palm	roots
Complete	wet__nd	p_l_r	b_lb	w_te_ li_y	_ate p__m	ro__s
Unscramble	nealwtd	lroap	ulbb	tewar lliy	etda lmap	otros
Write						

II Important 16 words

◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

A ▸ Look and write in English.

مراهق — teenager

صحراء

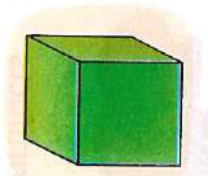
صمغ

سحلية

- lizard
- ~~teenager~~
- desert
- glue

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

glasses



cube

penguin

computer

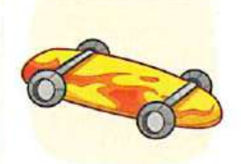
- بطريق
- حاسب آلى
- نظارة
- مكعب

Or

B ▸ Look and write in English.

حبّار

توأم



لوح تزلج

طفل رضيع

- baby
- cuttlefish
- twins
- skateboard

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

child

grassland — مرعى

flute

water lily

- زهرة زنبق الماء
- طفل
- مزمار
- ~~مرعى~~

Part 1

UNIT 8

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lessons 1, 2 & 3

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
necklace	ne__la_e	eckcanle	
statue	s__tue	ttasue	
portrait	p_rtr__t	ioratprt	
bracelet	bra__l_t	eacrlebt	
clay	cl__	lacy	
artifacts	_rtif__ts	tisfaratc	

Dictation on lesson 4

Read	sculpture	treasure	adventure	measure	pleasure	sea creatures
Complete	s__lpt_re	tre___re	a_ven_u_e	m__s_re	plea__r_	se_ crea__res
Unscramble	rpclustue	suraeter	druetnvae	eursmea	elapuser	eas seructaer
Write						

Dictation on lessons 5 & 6

Read	tomb	Pharaohs	temple	shade	archaeologist	fine lines
Complete	t__b	Pha__oh_	_emp_e	__ade	arch___log_st	_ine l__es
Unscramble	mbto	rsoaPahh	elemtp	desah	irchogaesalot	fnei nilse
Write						

Dictation on lesson 7

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
angle	an__e	n g e l a	
ceiling	ce_l__g	g i n c l i e	
square	s_ua_e	r e a s u q	
circle	cir_l_	i r c c e l	
triangle	t__ang_e	r e l g i t n a	

II Important 16 words

◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

A ▸ Look and write in English.

تمثال

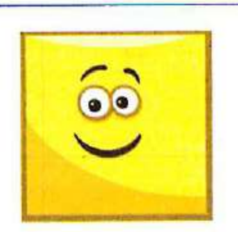
مقبرة

لوحة فنية

مغامرة

- adventure
- portrait
- statue
- tomb

▸ Look and write in Arabic.


square

sculpture

necklace

clay

- طين / صلصال
- قِلادة
- تمثال منحوت
- مربع

Or

B ▸ Look and write in English.

سوار

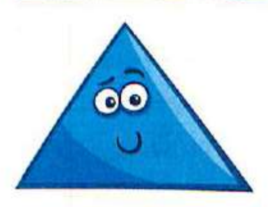
كنز

معبد

أبو الهول

- treasure
- the Sphinx
- bracelet
- temple

▸ Look and write in Arabic.


triangle

gold

archaeologist

plate

- ذهب
- عالم آثار
- طبق
- مثلث

Part 1

UNIT 9

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lessons 1 & 2

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
X-ray	X-r__	y r a - X	
elbow	elb__	o w l e b	
helmet	h_lme_	e t h m l e	
hurt	_urt	h t r u	
cast	ca__	a t s c	
medicine	med__ine	e c n i m i d e	

Dictation on lesson 3

Read	flour	plane	plain	write	flower	see
Complete	fl__r	pl_ne	p__in	wri__	fl__er	s__
Unscramble	u o l f r	p n a l e	a n i l p	r e t i w	l w o f r e	e s e
Write						

Dictation on lessons 4 & 5

Read	bandage	corridor	garage	library	mechanic	classmate
Complete	ban__ge	co__id_r	g_ra_e	_ib_ary	me__ani_	cla__m_te
Unscramble	a n e g b a d	r o o d i r c r	g a g r a e	l r a b i r y	a m i n h c e c	e l t a a c s m s
Write						

Dictation on lesson 6

Read	crutches	syringe	accident	wheelchair	blood	patient
Complete	cr_t__es	s_rin__	acc_d__t	__eelchair	bl__d	pat__nt
Unscramble	rehcctus	yrniseg	cdneicat	lcwaheehir	olodb	aitptne
Write						

Dictation on lessons 7 & 8

Read	herbs	aloe	mint	papyrus	ambulance	coast
Complete	h__bs	al__	_in_	pa__r_s	a__ulan__	c__st
Unscramble	rsbeh	leoa	nimt	appurys	banmeclua	osact
Write						

II Important 16 words

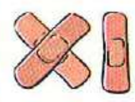
◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

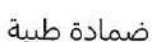
- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

A ▸ Look and write in English.

دواء

تكتب





ضمادة طبية

خوذة

- helmet
- write
- medicine
- bandage

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

flour

elbow

mint

corridor

- رواق / ممر
- دقيق
- كوع
- نبات النعناع

Or

B ▸ Look and write in English.

هليكوبتر

مريض

نبات البردى

طبيب جراح

- helicopter
- papyrus
- surgeon
- sick

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

wheelchair

cast

mechanic

accident

- ميكانيكي
- حادث
- كرسي متحرك
- ضمادة من الجبس

Part 1

UNIT 10

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lessons 1 & 2

Read	compass	magnet	needle	poles	repel	attract
Complete	co__ass	ma__et	n_ed_e	_ol_s	rep__	a__ra_t
Unscramble	a s s c p m o	e m n g a t	e l d e n e	s p e l o	p l e r e	a t t c a t r
Write						

Dictation on lesson 3

Read	umbrella	hungry	jacket	rain	board	wet
Complete	um_rel__	h__g_y	ja__et	ra__	_oa_d	we_
Unscramble	m a l l r b u e	u r g n h y	a t c e k j	r n i a	o d b r a	t w e
Write						

Dictation on lessons 4, 5 & 6

Read	hit	push	roll	pull	land	drop
Complete	h_t	pu__	_ol_	pu__	la_d	_rop
Unscramble	i t h	h s u p	l r l o	l l u p	n a l d	o r d p
Write						

Dictation on lessons 7, 8 & 9

Read	danger	bandage	nail	wire	factory	recycle
Complete	da_g_r	ban__ge	n__l	wi__	fa__ory	re_yc_e
Unscramble	e g a n d r	a b a d n e g	a n l i	r e i w	a c r o f t y	c c l y e r e
Write						

II Important 16 words

◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

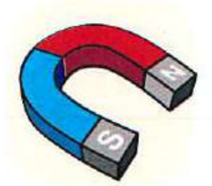
A ▸ Look and write in English.

إبرة

سلك

- danger
- needle
- magnet
- wire

خطر



مغناطيس

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

village

factory

- شمسية
- مسمار
- مصنع
- قرية

nail

umbrella

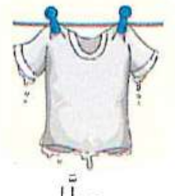
Or

B ▸ Look and write in English.

يعيد تدوير

يسحب

- pull
- recycle
- giraffe
- wet


مبلّل

زرافة

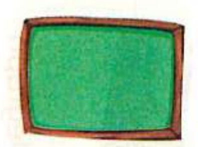
▸ Look and write in Arabic.

repel

drop

- بوصلة
- يسقط
- يتنافر
- سبورة

compass


board

Part 1

UNIT 11

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lessons 1, 2 & 3

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
television	tele___ion	tevleision	
typewriter	t_p_wri_er	wyetireptr	
telephone	_ele__one	elenothpe	
radio	_ad_o	irdao	
laptop	l_pt_p	poltpa	
telegraph	tel_g__ph	tgareleph	

Dictation on lesson 4

Read	mouse	printer	monitor	keyboard	hard drive
Complete	m__se	p_in_er	mo__t_r	_ey_oa_d	h_rd d__ve
Unscramble	s e m u o	t p n i r r e	m o t n o i r	k o e y b r a d	d h r a v d i r e
Write					

Dictation on lesson 5

Read	draw	short	straw	yawn	pause	Morse Code
Complete	dr__	s__rt	_tr__	ya__	p__se	M__se Co_e
Unscramble	w d a r	t r s o h	s r t w a	a w y n	a s u p e	o r M e s o C d e
Write						

II Important 16 words

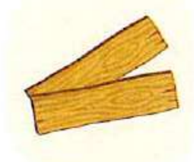
◄ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

A ► Look and write in English.

قطار بخارى

آلة كاتبة


خشب

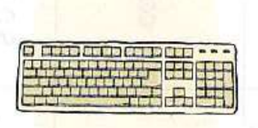
قارب

- boat
- steam train
- typewriter
- wood

► Look and write in Arabic.

monitor

ticket


keyboard

cell phone

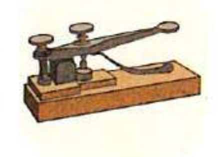
- تذكرة
- هاتف محمول
- لوحة مفاتيح
- شاشة

Or

B ► Look and write in English.

طابعة

شاليموه / عصا


تلغراف

مترو أنفاق

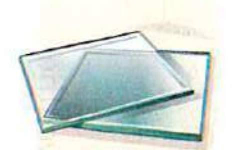
- telegraph
- straw
- subway
- printer

► Look and write in Arabic.

radio

ferry

mouse


glass

- فأرة
- عبّارة نيلية
- راديو
- زجاج

Part 1

UNIT 12

Dictation & Writing Assessments

تقييمات على الإملاء والكتابة.

الهدف من هذا الجزء : إتقان المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

I Dictation on lesson 1

Read	weather	article	headline	sports	cartoons	medal
Complete	we__er	a_ti_le	_ead__ne	spor__	ca_t__ns	m_d_l
Unscramble	eewrhta	rceliat	hneailde	rstsop	sonoctra	leadm
Write						

Dictation on lessons 2 & 3

Read	Complete	Unscramble	Write
floor	fl__r	l o f r o	
poster	po_t__	p r e o t s	
planet	pl__et	p n a l t e	
track	_rac_	r a t k c	
race	ra__	e r c a	
guide	g__de	e g d i u	

Dictation on lessons 4 & 5

Read	vehicle	camel	tunnel	journalists	printing	newspaper
Complete	ve__cl_	ca__l	t_nn_l	jo_rn__ists	p_in_ing	ne__pa_er
Unscramble	e e l c i v h	a e m c l	u e n n t l	s a i l n r j u o t s	g n n i r p t i	s p e p n a w e r
Write						

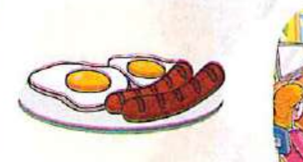
II Important 16 words

◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.
- يختار معلمك نموذج واحد من [A] أو [B].

A ▸ Look and write in English.

• race
• tunnel
• journalist
• breakfast


وجبة الأفطار

صحفي

نفق

سباق

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

• ميدالية
• كوكب
• مطر
• مستشفى

hospital

medal

rain

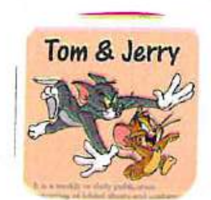
planet

Or

B ▸ Look and write in English.

• track
• cartoons
• newspaper
• scientist

عالم



كارتون

ميدان سباق

جريدة

▸ Look and write in Arabic.

• مذيع أخبار
• مقال
• مرشد
• فيضان

article

flood

guide

newsreader

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

Units 7 , 8 , 9 , 10 & 11 (/12)

Complete	b__t	um_re__a	tel_vi__on	ke_b__rd
Unscramble	poltpa …………	itxa …………	rrefy …………	elndee …………
Write	…………	…………	…………	…………

Units 7 , 8 , 9 , 10 , 11 & 12 (/12)

Complete	p_an_t	new__ea_er	t_n_el	m__se
Unscramble	nawy …………	anrjiuolst …………	iksc …………	nitseicts …………
Write	…………	…………	…………	…………

PART

2

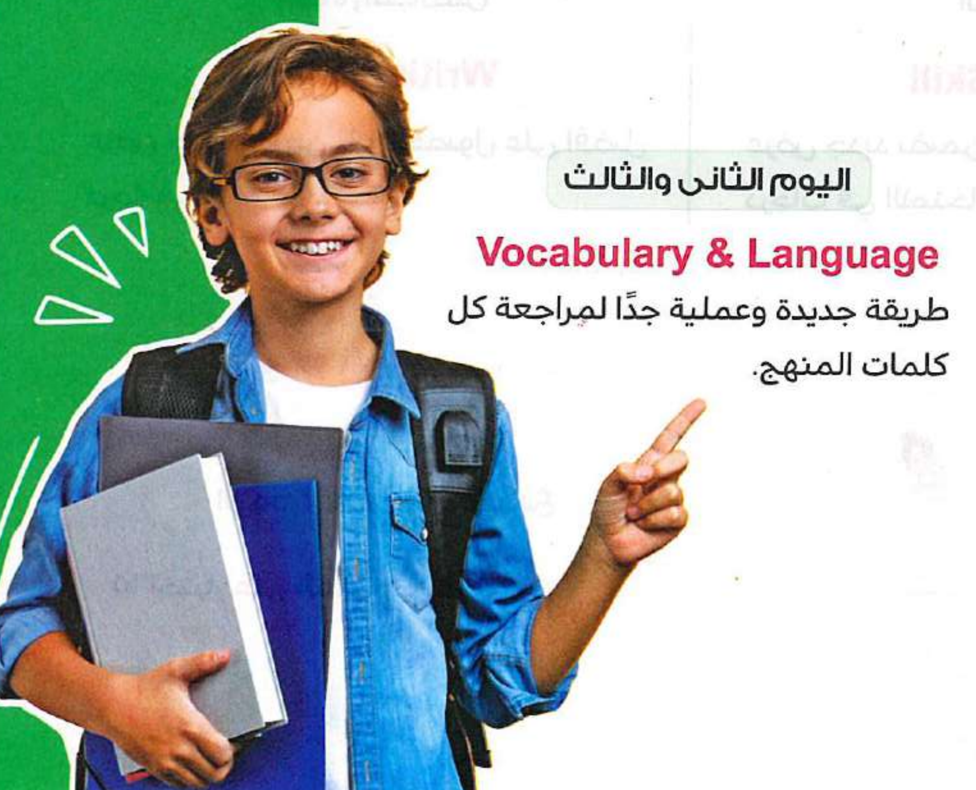
A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

اليوم الأول

Listening

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على
افضل درجة في الامتحان.

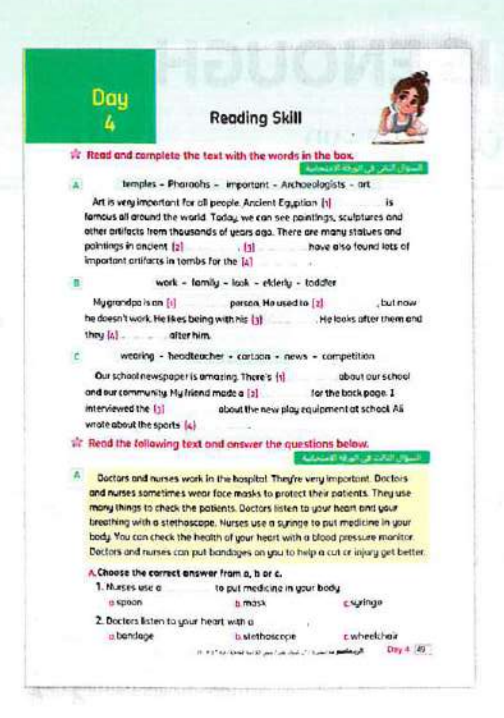


اليوم الثاني والثالث

Vocabulary & Language

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل
كلمات المنهج.

عرض كل قواعد المنهج
للمراجعة والتدرب عليها.



Day 4

Reading Skill

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

A temples - Pharaohs - important - Archaeologists - art

Art is very important for all people. Ancient Egyptian (1) .... is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures and other artifacts from thousands of years ago. There are many statues and paintings in ancient (2) .... (3) .... have also found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the (4) ....

B work - family - look - elderly - toddler

My grandpa is an (1) .... person. He used to (2) .... , but now he doesn't work. He likes being with his (3) .... He looks after them and they (4) .... after him.

C wearing - headteacher - cartoon - news - competition

Our school newspaper is amazing. There's (1) .... about our school and our community. My friend made a (2) .... for the back page. I interviewed the (3) .... about the new play equipment at school. Ali wrote about the sports (4) ....

Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A Doctors and nurses work in the hospital. They're very important. Doctors and nurses sometimes wear face masks to protect their patients. They use many things to check the patients. Doctors listen to your heart and your breathing with a stethoscope. Nurses use a syringe to put medicine in your body. You can check the health of your heart with a blood pressure monitor. Doctors and nurses can put bandages on you to help a cut or injury get better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Nurses use a .... to put medicine in your body.
 a. spoon b. mask c. syringe
2. Doctors listen to your heart with a ....
 a. bandage b. stethoscope c. wheelchair

Day 4 49

Day 5

Writing Skill

Read, order and write.

1. many - are - How - sculptures - there ?
2. have - predators - Rabbits - lots - of.
3. I - with - play - to - the magnet - like.
4. are - hospital - They - at - the.
5. mustn't - loud - music - You - play.
6. were - The children - in - playing - park - the.
7. her - She - interviewed - teacher.
8. will - need - a compass - Why - we ?
9. want - wear - I don't - to - a cast.
10. can - Aloe - help - with - burns.

Day 5 53

اليوم الرابع

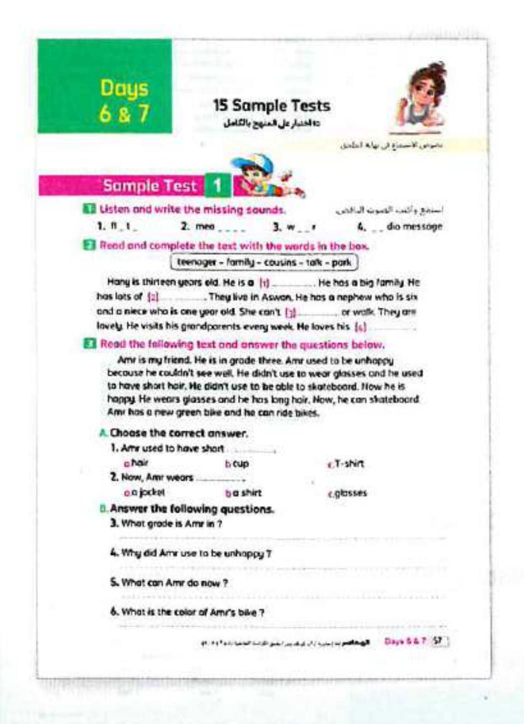
Reading Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات في الامتحان.

اليوم الخامس

Writing Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على افضل درجة في الامتحان.



Days 6 & 7

15 Sample Tests

Sample Test 1

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. fl_t_ 2. mea____ 3. w__r 4. __dio message

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teenager - family - cousins - talk - park

Hany is thirteen years old. He is a (1) .... He has a big family. He has lots of (2) .... They live in Aswan. He has a nephew who is six and a niece who is one year old. She can't (3) .... or walk. They are lovely. He visits his grandparents every week. He loves his (4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amr is my friend. He is in grade three. Amr used to be unhappy because he couldn't see well. He didn't use to wear glasses and he used to have short hair. He didn't use to be able to skateboard. Now he is happy. He wears glasses and he has long hair. Now, he can skateboard. Amr has a new green bike and he can ride bikes.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Amr used to have short ....
 a. hair b. cup c. T-shirt
2. Now, Amr wears ....
 a. a jacket b. a shirt c. glasses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What grade is Amr in ?
4. Why did Amr use to be unhappy ?
5. What can Amr do now ?
6. What is the color of Amr's bike ?

Days 6 & 7 57

اليوم السادس والسابع

١٥ اختبار على المنهج بالكامل.

Day 1

Listening Skill

Phonics

Unit 7

ew /u:/ — jewel, flew

ue /u:/ — glue, blue

u-e /u:/ — cube, flute

Unit 8

/tʃər/ — adventure, sculpture

/ʒər/ — pleasure, measure

Unit 9

Homophones

sea — see

where — wear

right — write

Unit 10

g as j /dʒ/

village, bandage

giraffe, danger

Unit 11

aw

draw — yawn

au

audio message — pause

or

short — Morse Code

Unit 12

-le

article — vehicle

-el

tunnel — camel

-al

musical — hospital

Pop Quiz on Phonics

☆ **Listen and write the missing sounds.**

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

A	**1.** hospit _ _	**2.** gl _ _	**3.** sculp _ _ _ _	**4.** fl _ t _
B	**1.** bl _ _	**2.** J _ n _	**3.** artic _ _	**4.** dan _ er
C	**1.** sculp _ _ _ _	**2.** M _ _ se Code	**3.** dr _ _	**4.** cam _ _
D	**1.** ener _ y	**2.** w _ _ te	**3.** n _ _	**4.** _ _ dio message
E	**1.** c _ b _	**2.** vehic _ _	**3.** mea _ _ _ _	**4.** gl _ _
F	**1.** j _ _ el	**2.** dr _ _	**3.** tunn _ _	**4.** pl _ n _
G	**1.** sea crea _ _ _ _	**2.** villa _ e	**3.** sh _ _ t	**4.** s _ a
H	**1.** y _ _ n	**2.** trea _ _ _ _	**3.** music _ _	**4.** fl _ wer
I	**1.** chan _ e	**2.** p _ _ se	**3.** villa _ e	**4.** sh _ _ t
J	**1.** adven _ _ _ _	**2.** c _ b _	**3.** cam _ _	**4.** bl _ _

Days 2 & 3

Vocabulary & Language

أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية

I Vocabulary

Unit 7

baby	طفل رضيع	glue	صمغ	non-identical	غير متماثل
toddler	طفل صغير [يبدأ المشى]	true	حقيقي / صحيح	species	سلالات / أنواع
child	طفل	sibling	شقيق	polar	قطبي
teenager	مراهق	twins	توأم	organism	كائن حي
adult	شخص بالغ	triplets	ثلاثة توائم	camouflaged	مموه
elderly person	شخص كبير السن	quadruplets	أربعة توائم	predator	مفترس
new	جديد	pollen grains	حبوب اللقاح	bulb	بصيلة النبات
jewel	جوهرة	identical	متماثل	attract	يجذب

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. He is 30 years old. He is a/an ....
   a. baby b. adult c. toddler
2. .... are born at the same time.
   a. Twins b. Bulbs c. Books
3. The flowers produce pollen ....
   a. paper b. grains c. insects

Unit 8

tool	أداة	portrait	صورة فنية لوجه ما / لوحة	shading	تظليل
statue	تمثال	adventure	مغامرة	three-dimensional	ثلاثي الابعاد
bracelet	سوار	treasure	كنز	geometric pattern	نمط هندسي
necklace	قلادة / عُقد	sea creature	مخلوق بحرى	traditional	تقليدي
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	tomb	مقبرة	tiles	بلاط
clay	طين / صلصال	temple	معبد	ceiling	سقف
sculpture	تمثال منحوت	model	نموذج	real = realistic	حقيقي / واقعي
jewelry	مجوهرات	archaeologist	عَالِم آثار	wrist	معصم اليد

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. She wears a .... around her wrist.
   a. necklace b. ring c. bracelet
2. We can see .... in the museums.
   a. computers b. sculptures c. toys
3. People used .... to make small objects in Ancient Egypt.
   a. clay b. juice c. magazines

Unit 9

X-ray	أشعة سينية	scan	فحص بالأشعة السينية	crutches	عكازات
cast	ضمادة من الجبس [جبيرة]	infection	عدوى	first-aid kit	حقيبة إسعافات أولية
helmet	خوذة	plain	سادة	stethoscope	سماعة طبيب
injury	جرح	visitor	زائر	blood pressure monitor	جهاز قياس ضغط الدم
elbow	كوع	corridor	رواق / ممر		
surgeon	طبيب جراح	bandage	ضمادة طبية	aloe	نبات الصبار
accident	حادثة	face mask	واقي وجه	herbs	أعشاب
treatment	علاج	syringe	حقنة	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The hospital is a place for ....
   a. treatment b. eating c. swimming
2. You must put a .... on your cut.
   a. bag b. bandage c. cup
3. He can't walk. He uses a ....
   a. wheelchair b. racket c. face mask

Unit 10

needle إبرة	south جنوب	speed سرعة
compass بوصلة	direction اتجاه	contact force قوة التلامس
magnetic field مجال مغناطيسى	balance توازن	movement حركة
poles أقطاب	magnetism مغناطيسية	handle مقبض
magnet مغناطيس	friction احتكاك	rub out يزيل / يمحى
adventure مغامرة	push يدفع	smooth ناعم / أملس
navigate يتنقل	bandage ضمادة طبية	map خريطة
attract يجذب	danger خطر	MRI scan فحص التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسى
north شمال	bounce وثب / ارتداد	

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The .... has a north pole and a south pole.
   a. phone b. magnet c. plant
2. The magnetic .... is invisible.
   a. club b. book c. field
3. The door .... is made of metal.
   a. handle b. mouse c. factory

Unit 11

telegraph تلغراف	wider screen شاشة أوسع	keyboard لوحة مفاتيح
radio راديو / مذياع	code شفرة / رمز	horse and cart حصان وعربة
typewriter آلة كاتبة	machine آلة / ماكينة	straw عصا (شاليموه)
telephone هاتف أرضى	mouse فأرة	pause توقف
television تلفزيون	printer طابعة	steam train قطار بخارى
laptop حاسب محمول	monitor شاشة	subway مترو الأنفاق
World Wide Web شبكة الإنترنت العالمية	external hard drive قرص صلب خارجي	central processing unit (CPU) وحدة المعالجة المركزية

★ **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. People used a .... to write in the past.
a. tablet b. typewriter c. cell phone

2. We can travel by .... on water.
a. ferry b. taxi c. bike

3. The oldest type of transportation is the horse and ....
a. plane b. cart c. ferry

Unit 12

headline	عنوان	advertisement	إعلان	layout specialist	متخصص التخطيط
byline	بقلم	interview	مقابلة شخصية	production	إنتاج
article	مقال	race	سباق	the printing press	المطبعة
caption	تعليق	track	ميدان سباق	newspapers	جرائد
weather	الطقس	vehicle	مركبة / عربة	TV news	أخبار التلفاز
sports	رياضة	journalist	صحفي	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
cartoons	كاريكاتير (رسوم متحركة)	editor	محرر		

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. In the newspaper, ... give us information about competitions and games.
a. cartoons b. advertisements c. sports

2. She was running at the ....
a. track b. newspaper c. juice

3. .... work on a newspaper.
a. Journalists b. Vets c. Doctors

II Language

Unit 7

1 Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Statements	Subj.	+	inf. / (inf. + s / es / ies) don't / doesn't + inf.	• I go to school early.

2 Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Statements	Subj.	+	am/is/are + inf. + ing.	• He is playing volleyball.

3 Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Statements	Subj.	+	التصريف الثانى للفعل didn't + inf.	• We didn't visit our grandparents.

4 Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Statements	Subj.	+	have / has haven't / hasn't + p.p.	• He has climbed the mountain.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A 1. She .... her room every day.
a. clean b. cleans c. cleaning

2. They didn't .... to Alexandria.
a. go b. goes c. went

3. We are .... football at the moment.
a. play b. playing c. plays

4. I haven't .... this film.
a. seen b. see c. saw

B 1. She .... sleep well yesterday.
a. don't b. didn't c. haven't

2. Does .... like ice cream ?
a. we b. they c. she

3. We .... studying now.
a. hasn't b. aren't c. isn't

4. They .... done their homework.
a. have b. is c. do

Unit 8

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable	There are two cups of tea.	- الاسم المفرد الذى يعد يسبق بأداة نكرة. - الاسماء التى تعد لها مفرد وجمع.
Uncountable	There is some water.	- الاسم الذى لا يعد لا يسبق بأداة نكرة. - الاسماء التى لا تعد ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A 1. Would you like .... tea ?
a. any b. some c. a

2. There aren't .... pencils.
a. a b. an c. any

3. There isn't .... paper.
a. much b. many c. some

4. He used .... wood to make this chair.
a. some b. any c. three

B 1. We saw .... sculptures in the museum.
a. any b. some c. a

2. There aren't .... books.
a. any b. some c. no

3. There .... enough water in the bottle.
a. isn't b. aren't c. are

4. There are some .... in the box.
a. a tool b. tools c. tool

1 If (Zero Conditional)

If + present simple, present simple

If you freeze water, it becomes ice.

2 must / mustn't

must	mustn't
Subj. + must + inf.	Subj. + mustn't + inf.
You must respect your teachers.	You mustn't play soccer in the hospital.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A

1. You .... make noise in the library.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should
2. If I .... sick, I go to hospital.
   a. gets b. got c. get
3. If she .... to school, she gets fit.
   a. cycle b. cycled c. cycles
4. We .... respect our teachers.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't

B

1. You must .... the trash in the bin.
   a. puts b. put c. putting
2. We .... shout in the classroom.
   a. mustn't b. must c. should
3. If you freeze water, it .... ice.
   a. become b. becomes c. became
4. If she doesn't .... early, she gets tired.
   a. sleep b. sleeps c. slept

Unit 10

First conditional " If "

Statements: If + subj. + present simple ..., subj. + will/won't + inf. ... .

If they watch this video, they 'll learn about magnets.

Questions: Will + subj. + inf. ... if + subj. + present simple ... ?

If + subj. + present simple, will + subj. + inf. ... ?

Will the bell make a sound if I pull the string ?

Wh - word + will + inf. + if + subj. + present simple ... ?

What will happen if I drop the pencil ?

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A

1. If I don't go to bed early, I .... be tired.
   a. will   b. am   c. was
2. If I .... too many sweets, I'll feel sick.
   a. eats   b. ate   c. eat
3. If she .... use a map, she will get lost.
   a. doesn't   b. don't   c. aren't
4. Where will the ball .... if I throw it ?
   a. going   b. go   c. went

B

1. If I push the door, ... it open ?
   a. will   b. did   c. was
2. If you eat your breakfast, you .... be hungry.
   a. will   b. won't   c. isn't
3. If he .... that way, he'll get lost.
   a. go   b. going   c. goes
4. I .... go outside if it is rainy.
   a. won't   b. isn't   c. aren't

The Present Simple Passive :

Statements Subj. + am / is / are + p.p. + [by + object] → • Videos on the internet are seen by many people.

The Past Simple Passive :

Statements Subj + was / were + p.p. + [by + object] → • Radios were used for listening to music.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A 1. The chair is .... of wood.

a. make b. makes c. made

2. Many messages .... sent all over the world.

a. was b. are c. is

3. Morse Code was .... to make messages simple.

a. develops b. develop c. developed

4. Are radios .... for listening to music programs ?

a. used b. use c. uses

B 1. Computers .... used in the past.

a. wasn't b. weren't c. aren't

2. Emails aren't .... on telegraph machines.

a. wrote b. written c. write

3. Videos on the internet .... seen by many people.

a. are b. is c. was

4. Two windows .... yesterday.

a. were broken b. was broken c. are breaking

The Past Continuous Tense

Statements	Subj. + was / were — wasn't / weren't + inf. + ing. .... → • My dad was reading a newspaper.
questions	Was / Were + subj. + inf. + ing. + ... ?
	Were you playing tennis after school yesterday ?
	Wh-word + was / were + subj. + inf. + ing. + ... ?
	What was he doing at 10:00 yesterday ?

Pop Quiz on Language

05 min

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A

1. He .... swimming in the sea at 5 p.m. yesterday evening.
   a. were b. was c. are
2. What was she .... at 3 p.m ?
   a. doing b. do c. does
3. We weren't .... fish.
   a. cook b. cooked c. cooking
4. .... was doing my homework at 6.00 p.m yesterday.
   a. We b. They c. I

B

1. Ahmed .... walking in the park at 3 p.m yesterday.
   a. was b. were c. are
2. They were .... to music at 8 am yesterday morning.
   a. listens b. listening c. listened
3. Ali and Omar .... playing football all day yesterday.
   a. was b. is c. were
4. He was .... his school bag on his way to school.
   a. carry b. carries c. carrying

Day 4

Reading Skill

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية

A temples - Pharaohs - important - Archaeologists - art

Art is very important for all people. Ancient Egyptian (1) .... is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures and other artifacts from thousands of years ago. There are many statues and paintings in ancient (2) .... (3) .... have also found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the (4) ....

B work - family - look - elderly - toddler

My grandpa is an (1) .... person. He used to (2) ...., but now he doesn't work. He likes being with his (3) .... He looks after them and they (4) .... after him.

C wearing - headteacher - cartoon - news - competition

Our school newspaper is amazing. There's (1) .... about our school and our community. My friend made a (2) .... for the back page. I interviewed the (3) .... about the new play equipment at school. Ali wrote about the sports (4) ....

Read the following text and answer the questions below.

السؤال الثالث فى الورقة الامتحانية

A Doctors and nurses work in the hospital. They're very important. Doctors and nurses sometimes wear face masks to protect their patients. They use many things to check the patients. Doctors listen to your heart and your breathing with a stethoscope. Nurses use a syringe to put medicine in your body. You can check the health of your heart with a blood pressure monitor. Doctors and nurses can put bandages on you to help a cut or injury get better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Nurses use a .... to put medicine in your body.

a. spoon b. mask c. syringe

2. Doctors listen to your heart with a ....

a. bandage b. stethoscope c. wheelchair

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where do doctors work ?

....

4. Why do doctors and nurses wear face masks ?

....

5. Why do doctors and nurses put bandages on you ?

....

6. How can you check the health of your heart ?

....

B

A compass can show you which direction is north. It has a magnetic needle which will point to the magnetic North Pole. A map always has an arrow that shows the direction of north. You can use this when you read a map to show you where to go.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. A .... has a magnetic needle.

a. map b. compass c. magnet

2. A map always has a/an ....

a. arrow b. pole c. needle

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can a compass show you ?

....

4. What does a compass have ?

....

5. Where will the magnetic needle point to ?

....

6. When can you use a compass ?

....

C

I'm Hana. I'm in grade three. Yesterday, I was doing a project about communication in the past. There are different types of communication. Communication types in the past were different. A telegraph machine was the first way of sending messages around the world quickly. It used Morse Code. That's a code of short and long clicks. The telegraph machine can send signals along a wire.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Hana is in grade ....

a. 4 b. 3 c. 2

2. A telegraph machine used a special code called ....

a. Braille b. Morse Code c. MFA Code

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was Hana's project about ?

....

4. What was the first way of sending messages ?

....

5. What is Morse Code ?

....

6. How can telegraph machine send signals ?

....

The Reader

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية

A A. **Read and match.**

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma's dad showed her	☐ a. an inventor.
2. Nesma's grandma used to be	☐ b. a vet.
	☐ c. a box belonged to her Grandma.

B. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. Nesma thought that magnet could make the car stay on the track. ☐
2. Nesma wanted to invent a plane to help people in the earthquake. ☐

B A. **Read and match.**

[A]	[B]
1. Laila helped Nesma	☐ a. the model car and smiled.
2. The judges looked at	☐ b. on the internet.
	☐ c. build a car and a track.

B. **Read and write Yes or No :**

1. Nesma's mom found a solar panel online. (..............)
2. Nesma used thin wood to make a frame. (..............)

C A. **Read and match.**

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma wants to be	☐ a. a teacher.
2. The car had	☐ b. an inventor.
	☐ c. a little spring inside it.

B. **Read and write T (True) or F (False) :**

1. The two girls put the car in the sun. ☐
2. There will be a party for sports at school. ☐

Day 5

Writing Skill

Read, order and write.

السؤال السادس فى الورقة الامتحانية

1. many - are - How - sculptures - there ?

....

2. have - predators - Rabbits - lots - of.

....

3. I - with - play - to - the magnet - like.

....

4. are - hospital - They - at - the.

....

5. mustn't - loud - music - You - play.

....

6. were - The children - in - playing - park - the.

....

7. her - She - interviewed - teacher.

....

8. will - need - a compass - Why - we ?

....

9. want - wear - I don't - to - a cast.

....

10. can - Aloe - help - with - burns.

....

Important Topics

Unit 7

"Life stages"

Each of life stages is interesting. A baby can't talk or walk. A toddler learns a lot about the world. An adult can walk, run, jump and swim.

"What you used to do"

I used to ride a bike when I was six. I didn't use to be able to swim, but now I can. I didn't use to take the bus to school, but now I do.

"Your family"

I have a big family. My father always goes to work and looks after us. He used to buy me a new present on my birthday in June. We always go to the park on weekends. I love my family.

"Identical twins"

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers. Twins often think and behave in similar ways.

"Animal families"

A litter of newborn rabbits looks very different from their parents. As they get older, the rabbits in a litter will grow similar to each other, but not identical. The offspring have inherited some traits from their parents.

"Rainforest plants"

There is an incredible variety of plants on Earth. There are a lot of plants in the rainforest. Some plants have drip tip leaves. Other plants use bright colors to attract insects. Rainforest trees are very tall and have wide roots.

"How plants adapt"

Plants are living organisms, and they also reproduce and adapt. There are tall trees in the rainforest, cactus plants in the desert and water lilies in ponds. They are all different and they adapt to their environment in amazing ways.

"Adaptation in animals"

All animals adapt to their environment to survive. The penguin can swim a long way under water to catch fish. The cuttlefish can change color with its surroundings, so it can hide from predators. The finch has a large beak so it can eat lots of different seeds. The lizard has adapted to look like a leaf, so other animals don't eat it.

Unit 8

"A visit to a museum"

Yesterday, we went on a school trip to a museum. There were lots of things to see in the museum. We saw jewelry, artifacts and statues. It was an amazing trip.

"Learning about the past"

I like seeing things in museums. I can really understand what things were like in the past when I see ancient artifacts. We can learn more about our culture by understanding our past.

"Ancient Egyptian art"

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Archaeologists have found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the Pharaohs. Paintings in tombs often showed pictures of the Ancient Egyptians' lives. They made small models of boats, animals and people in tombs.

"Shading"

Shading is one of the most important things to learn. To make a picture look three - dimensional, you can use shading. Shading makes a picture look interesting and real.

"Geometric patterns"

A geometric pattern is made of lots of shapes. People use geometric shapes in art to create patterns. Geometric shapes can create abstract patterns. These can be very beautiful.

"Archaeologists"

I'm interested in the past and I think artifacts from the past are interesting. I want to be an archaeologist. Archaeologists study artifacts to learn more about the past.

Unit 9

"Hospitals"

A hospital is a place where people can go for treatment. At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. Doctors and nurses at the hospital help sick people get better.

"School rules"

At school, we must listen to our teachers. We must keep our class clean. We mustn't make fun of our classmates. We mustn't talk unless we raise our hand.

"Doctors"

Doctors are very important. They work hard to help patients get better. Doctors wear face masks to protect their patients. They can put medicine in a patient's body with a syringe. They also can put bandages on a patient to help a cut or injury get better.

"Medicine in the past"

Doctors in the past used different medicines but some of their ideas are useful today. They used herbs to treat some diseases. They also used honey to treat infections and skin problems.

"Flying doctors"

The flying doctors are pilots as well as doctors. They can help with emergencies or injuries and they can fly people to a hospital. It is much quicker than traveling by road.

"Hospital rules"

We must follow some rules in the hospital. We mustn't have more than three visitors. We mustn't play loud music in the hospital. Patients must get lots of rest.

Unit 10

"Magnets"

A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south pole. The south pole attracts the north pole. The same poles repel. A magnetic field is an area around a magnet.

"Forces"

A force is something that can make things move. Pushing, pulling and friction are contact forces. A push force moves an object away or forwards. A pull force brings an object towards you.

"My village"

I live in a nice village. In my village, there are lots of animals. My favorite is the cat. My cat likes playing and climbing the trees. I also like cows and goats there.

"Uses of magnets"

Magnets are useful at home and at school. We can use magnets in medicine, farming, factories and computers. For example, in hospitals, an MRI scan uses a magnetic field to make pictures of organs inside our bodies.

"Using magnets in farming"

Sometimes cows eat bits of metal that are on the ground in fields, such as nails or bits of wire. Farmers give cows a magnet to swallow. The magnet stays inside the cow's stomach and attracts all the metal. This stops the metal from damaging the cow's digestive system.

Unit 11

"Telegraph machine"

The first way of sending messages was the telegraph machine. Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called telegrams. In telegrams, important information was written and read quickly. They were written in Morse Code.

"Computers"

Computers are very important inventions. Mouse, printer and keyboard are parts of a computer. Central processing unit (CPU) is the brain of the computer. It makes the computer follow instructions.

"Transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Horse and cart is an old-fashioned type of transportation. Airplanes and trains are forms of transportation for long journeys. High-speed train is a modern type of transportation.

"Pros of transportation"

Transportation is very important. It helps us move from one place to another. It has a lot of pros. Bikes don't cause pollution and they are cheap. Buses have lots of room for our bags. Buses are also comfortable. We can see the country when we're traveling by car. And we can travel at the time that suits us.

Unit 12

"Our school newspaper"

Boys and girls in my school helped to make our school newspaper. There is news about our school and community in it. There is an interview with our headteacher in it. My friend Noha made a cartoon for the back page. Our school newspaper looks really interesting.

"How are newspapers made ?"

Journalists, editors, and layout specialists have to work very quickly to get the newspaper ready. When the files are ready, they are sent to the printing press. The newspapers are packed overnight. They are sent to shops all over the country for people to buy.

"Radio news"

We can listen to the news on the radio when we are in the car or at home. The radio presenters explain everything very clearly. Sometimes people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio program. It's very interesting.

"Sources of news"

We can get news from different sources. Newspapers, TV, radio, and social media are sources of news. My father likes buying a newspaper every day to read the main news stories. My mom likes listening to news on the radio.

15 Sample Tests

١٥ اختبار على المنهج بالكامل

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

Sample Test 1

1 Listen and write the missing sounds. استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. fl _ t _ 2. mea _ _ _ _ 3. w _ _ r 4. _ _ dio message

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teenager – family – cousins – talk – park

Hany is thirteen years old. He is a [1] .... He has a big family. He has lots of [2] .... They live in Aswan. He has a nephew who is six and a niece who is one year old. She can't [3] .... or walk. They are lovely. He visits his grandparents every week. He loves his [4] ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amr is my friend. He is in grade three. Amr used to be unhappy because he couldn't see well. He didn't use to wear glasses and he used to have short hair. He didn't use to be able to skateboard. Now he is happy. He wears glasses and he has long hair. Now, he can skateboard. Amr has a new green bike and he can ride bikes.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Amr used to have short ....
   a. hair b. cup c. T-shirt
2. Now, Amr wears ....
   a. a jacket b. a shirt c. glasses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What grade is Amr in ?
....
4. Why did Amr use to be unhappy ?
....
5. What can Amr do now ?
....
6. What is the color of Amr's bike ?
....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Laila and Nesma won •	☐ a. to help her.
2. Nesma asked her mom •	☐ b. to the wheels.
	☐ c. a prize.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Laila wants to be an inventor. ☐
2. Nesma and Laila put the car in the sun. ☐

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. A computer .... made of metal, plastic and glass.
   a. is b. are c. were
2. The editor was .... a new story for the newspaper.
   a. choose b. choosing c. chooses
3. Every night, my sister .... a new book.
   a. to read b. reads c. reading
4. Would you like .... tea ?
   a. some b. an c. any

6 Read, order and write.

1. get - You - lots - rest - must - of.

....

2. cart - push - you - the - Can ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Adaptation in plants

Guiding elements :

- pollen
- produce
- traits

....
....
....
....

Sample Test 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. vehic _ _ 2. gl _ _ 3. trea _ _ _ _ 4. M _ _ se Code

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

museum – sculptures – Ancient – clay – medicine

Mona and her family went to the (1) .... They saw many (2) .... (3) .... Egyptians made a lot of artifacts. They used (4) .... to make them.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ramy fell off his skateboard at the club. He broke his leg. He had his helmet on, so he didn't hurt his head. His father took him to the doctor. The doctor said he had to wear a cast for three weeks. Ramy's family were worried and sad.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Ramy fell off his ....
   a. bike b. skateboard c. car
2. Ramy will wear a .... for three weeks.
   a. cast b. helmet c. bandage

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Ramy fall off his skateboard ?

....

4. How did Ramy's family feel ?

....

5. Where did Ramy's father take him ?

....

6. What did Ramy have on his head ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

(A)		(B)
1. Nesma's mom found a cheap panel •		☐ a. for the car to travel on.
2. The two girls made a frame •		☐ b. on the internet.
		☐ c. were worried.

B. Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Nesma found a drawing of a small toy car in the old box. (....................)
2. Nesma learned about magnets on the internet. (....................)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. My brothers .... football in the park now.
   a. play   b. are playing   c. plays
2. How .... wood is there ? – There isn't any wood.
   a. many   b. much   c. often
3. If you .... a magnet on a metal board, it will stick.
   a. put   b. puts   c. putting
4. We must .... the animals.
   a. feed   b. feeds   c. fed

6 Read, order and write.

1. used - in - Ancient - medicine - herbs - Egyptians.

....

2. reads - on - the news - her - phone - My sister.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Uses of magnets

Guiding elements :

- useful
- magnetic
- stick

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. sculp _ _ _ _ 2. cam _ _ 3. dr _ _ 4. n _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

diseases - help - plants - hospital - treat

Ancient Egyptians are clever people. They used some (1) .... as medicine. They used herbs to treat some (2) .... Aloe can (3) .... with burns. They also used honey to (4) .... infections.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ancient Egyptian art is amazing, so it is famous all around the world. We can see lots of paintings, jewelry, sculptures, and artifacts from Ancient Egypt in museums today. They are thousands of years old. Archaeologists have also found important artifacts in the Pharaohs' tombs. Some of these artifacts are small models of animals, people, and boats. The paintings often showed the pictures of Pharaohs. Paintings and artifacts have survived for a long time because Egypt is a very dry country.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Some of the artifacts are small models of ....
   a. buildings b. animals c. clothes
2. The .... showed the pictures of Pharaohs.
   a. deserts b. metals c. paintings

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the Ancient Egyptian art famous all around the world ?

....

4. What can you see in museums today ?

....

5. What have the archaeologists found in the Pharaohs' tombs ?

....

6. Why have the artifacts survived for a long time ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. There was a competition	a. to go under the car.
2. The two girls need some magnets	b. energy from the spring.
	c. for the best invention.

B. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. Nesma's grandma was reading the school newsletter. [ ]
2. The old box has lots of things that used to belong to Nesma's grandma. [ ]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I .... use to be able to swim, but now I can.
   a. didn't   b. don't   c. doesn't
2. If you drop a glass, it ....
   a. breaking   b. breaks   c. broken
3. He .... playing football at the club at 5 p.m yesterday evening.
   a. was   b. were   c. is
4. Doaa always .... her bed in the morning.
   a. made   b. makes   c. make

6 Read, order and write.

1. has - needle - A compass - a magnetic.

....

2. lily - leaves - The water - flat - has.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Twins

Guiding elements :

- born
- siblings
- similar

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص

1. adven _ _ _ _ 2. ener _ y 3. J _ n _ 4. y _ _ n

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cast – hospital – magnet – elbow – bike

Last week, Ali's parents were sad and worried. Ali fell off his [1] .... at the sports club. He broke his [2] .... His father took him to the [3] .... The doctor told Ali to wear a [4] .... to get better.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Sara. Our English lesson today was about magnets. A magnet is a piece of metal that can attract or repel some other metals. Magnets have a north pole and a south pole. When the north pole of one magnet is close to the south pole of another magnet, they attract. The north pole of a magnet repels the north pole of another magnet, and the south pole of a magnet repels the south pole of another magnet. A magnetic field is an area around a magnet which can pull objects towards it. We can't see this - it is invisible.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A magnet is a piece of ....
   a. metal b. plastic c. wood
2. The north pole of a magnet .... the north pole of another magnet.
   a. damages b. attracts c. repels

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was the English lesson about ?

....

4. How many poles does a magnet have ?

....

5. What is a magnetic field ?

....

6. Can we see the magnetic field ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. There were letters	a. hard for the competition.
2. Nesma and Laila worked	b. travel in dangerous.
	c. in the old box.

B. Read and write [YES] or [NO].

1. Laila wants Nesma to take part in the school competition. [....................]
2. Nesma's friend knows someone who used to make drawings and inventions. [....................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We mustn't .... in the library.
   a. shout   b. shouts   c. shouting
2. How .... rice is there ?
   a. much   b. many   c. long
3. If it's sunny, they .... tennis.
   a. will play   b. have played   c. are playing
4. Is the laptop .... for sending emails ?
   a. use   b. uses   c. used

6 Read, order and write.

1. mustn't - loud - You - music - play.

....

2. will - a compass - we - Why - need ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Computers

Guiding elements :

- use
- made of
- emails

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. dan _ er 2. bl _ _ 3. plea _ _ _ _ 4. tunn _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

five - clothes - travel - comfortable - seven

Sara and her family live in Aswan. They want to (1) .... to Cairo on holiday. Sara's dad wants to travel quickly. Sara's mom wants the journey to be (2) .... Sara took a lot of (3) .... with her. They have quite a lot of bags to take. There are (4) .... people traveling – Sara, her brother and sister, and their parents.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Ali. I'm interested in animals. Animals can adapt to different habitats. The polar bear has developed a layer of fat to keep it warm in cold climates.

The lizard has adapted to look like a leaf, so other animals don't eat it. The finch has a large beak so it can eat lots of different seeds. The addax antelope has long horns. It is white in summer to reflect heat, and gray in winter to keep warm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The finch has a large ....
   a. leg b. beak c. head
2. The addax antelope has long ....
   a. horns b. beaks c. feathers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Ali interested in ?

....

4. Why has the polar bear developed a layer of fat ?

....

5. What has the lizard adapted to look like ?

....

6. How can the finch eat lots of different seeds ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma loved	a. the frame.
2. The two girls stuck the long magnet to	b. to the car.
	c. inventing things.

B. Read and write [YES] or [NO].

1. Laila didn't help Nesma. [....................]
2. Nesma worked for a long time to get some ideas for the competition. [....................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I .... play games yesterday.
   a. could b. can c. be
2. You .... tidy your room.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't
3. If it .... , I will take an umbrella.
   a. rain b. rains c. rained
4. My sister .... books on weekends.
   a. to read b. reading c. reads

6 Read, order and write.

1. walking - the - in - Sherif - park - was.

....

2. My - is - nephew - baby - a.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Medicine

Guiding elements :

- herbs
- treat
- infections

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. banda _ es   2. j _ _ el   3. sea crea _ _ _ _   4. hospit _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mother - inherited - similar - doctors - grow

The litter of newborn rabbits looks very different from their parents. But soon their eyes will open and their fur will [1] .... As they get older, the rabbits in a litter will look [2] .... to each other, but not identical. The offspring have [3] .... some traits from their [4] .... and some traits from their father.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

When you are sick, you can go to a hospital in a car. Doctors and nurses can help sick people get better. In an emergency, you can go in an ambulance. The people who drive ambulances are called paramedics. They can give you first aid very quickly. Some countries also use helicopters to get people to a hospital in an emergency. These are very important and can save lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. We can go in a/an .... in an emergency.
   a. train   b. ambulance   c. car
2. .... give you first aid very quickly.
   a. Paramedics   b. Vets   c. Engineers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can we go when we're sick ?

....

4. Why do some countries use helicopters ?

....

5. Who can help sick people get better ?

....

6. What are the people who drive ambulances called ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma looked at websites •	☐ a. a car.
2. Nesma's grandma tried to make •	☐ b. a train.
	☐ c. for ideas.

B. Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Nesma showed her father her drawings. [....................]
2. Nesma was learning about magnets at school. [....................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Did you .... your homework ?
   a. finish b. finishes c. finishing
2. He is .... in the park.
   a. run b. runs c. running
3. I .... to school every day.
   a. go b. goes c. going
4. You must .... a helmet when riding a bike.
   a. wears b. to wear c. wear

6 Read, order and write.

1. Rabbits - long - and - ears - have - fur.

....

2. useful - school - Magnets - are - at.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Journalists

Guiding elements :

- work
- news
- interview

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 7

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. vehic _ _ 2. dr _ _ 3. dan _ er 4. tunn _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

accident - stethoscope - bandages - syringe - better

A doctor or nurse can put [1] .... on you to help a cut get [2] .... They can put medicine in your body with a [3] .... A doctor listens to your heart and your breathing with a [4] ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Ali. I live in Giza. Ahmed is my twin brother. Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. They can be identical or non-identical. Identical means that they are exactly the same. They look the same, and their bodies work and grow in the same way. Identical twins are always two sisters or two brothers.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Identical twins look ....

a. different b. the same c. large

2. .... can be identical and non-identical.

a. Trees b. Buildings c. Twins

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Ali live ?

....

4. Who is Ahmed ?

....

5. What does identical mean ?

....

6. What are twins ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma found a drawing	a. help Nesma.
2. Laila wanted to	b. was worried.
	c. of a small toy car.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. If Nesma wins a medal in the competition, she'll get some science equipment for her school. ☐
2. Nesma's mom loved inventing things. ☐

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. What .... you do yesterday ?
   a. do b. did c. does
2. My sister .... to have short hair, but now it's long.
   a. use b. uses c. used
3. She was .... for the exam.
   a. study b. studies c. studying
4. He .... learned to play the piano.
   a. has b. have c. were

6 Read, order and write.

1. is – digestive – the – Mint - good for – system.

....

2. can – all – the world - Journalists - travel – over.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Ancient Egyptian art

Guiding elements :

- famous
- paintings
- artifacts

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 8

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. str _ _ 2. sh _ _ t 3. tr _ _ 4. trea _ _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

breath - legs - nurses - masks - hospital

Doctors and nurses work in the (1) .... They're very important. Doctors and (2) .... sometimes wear face (3) .... to protect their patients. Doctors listen to your heart and your (4) .... with a stethoscope.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

My name is Belal. I have a big family. I have three cousins. My nephew, Tarek, is a baby. He can't walk or talk, but he sleeps a lot and likes playing. Last week, we had a party at my grandparents' house. I enjoyed my time there. We had a lot of fun.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Belal has a .... family.
   a. big b. small c. short
2. Belal .... his time at the party.
   a. studied b. worked c. enjoyed

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who is Tarek ?

....

4. When did Belal have a party ?

....

5. What can't Tarek do ?

....

6. How many cousins does Belal have ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. There was a competition for	a. hard for the competition.
2. Nesma and Laila worked	b. thin wood for a track.
	c. the best invention.

B. Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Nesma saw an advertisement in the school newsletter. [....................]
2. Nesma didn't learn about magnets. [....................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The children .... finished their homework.
   a. has b. have c. is
2. You must .... your teachers.
   a. respected b. respects c. respect
3. The book is .... by many students.
   a. reads b. read c. reading
4. The cake was .... by the children.
   a. eat b. eats c. eaten

6 Read, order and write.

1. is - sand - from - Glass - made.

....

2. bracelets - there - How - are - many ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Life stages of human

Guiding elements :

- toddler
- learn
- baby

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. _ iraffe 2. y _ _ n 3. sea crea _ _ _ _ 4. c _ b _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beautiful - decorate - patterns - music - buildings

Many (1) .... have geometric patterns in tiles. These small squares can (2) .... walls and ceilings. They use traditional (3) .... which are very detailed. The colors and styles are very (4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Doctors and surgeons in the past used different medicines to modern ones, but some of their ideas are useful today. Some things that they believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine. They used herbs to treat some diseases. They used honey to treat infections and skin problems. Honey can also make some infections better. Aloe can help with burns. Mint is good for the digestive system.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. .... in the past used different medicines to modern ones.
   a. Vets b. Teachers c. Surgeons
2. .... can make some infections better.
   a. Honey b. Jam c. Chocolate

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they use herbs ?

....

4. What plant can help with burns ?

....

5. What is good for the digestive system ?

....

6. What did they use to treat skin problems ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

(A)	(B)
1. The judges put a medal •	☐ a. in science lesson.
2. Nesma was learning about magnets •	☐ b. in math.
	☐ c. on the car.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The car had a little spring inside it. ☐
2. Nesma thought about the competition as she walked home. ☐

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. If he doesn't use a map, he will .... lost.
   a. gets b. get c. got
2. The children weren't .... their homework.
   a. do b. does c. doing
3. Morse Code was .... by Samuel Morse.
   a. invents b. invent c. invented
4. I have .... dinner for the family.
   a. cook b. cooked c. cooks

6 Read, order and write.

1. about - I - a camel - an article - read.

....

2. we - a compass - will - Why - need ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Hospital rules

Guiding elements :

- medicine
- visitors
- rest

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 10

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. sculp _ _ _ _ 2. villa _ e 3. dr _ _ 4. tunn _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

visitors - music - rest - rules - park

We must follow some (1) .... in the hospital. We mustn't have more than three (2) .... We mustn't play loud (3) .... in the hospital. Patients must get lots of (4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ancient Egyptian art is famous all around the world. Today, we can see paintings, sculptures, jewelry and other artifacts from thousands of years ago.

There are many statues and paintings in ancient temples. Because Egypt is a very dry country, the paintings and statues have survived for a long time.

Archaeologists have also found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the Pharaohs. People believed that these artifacts would help them in the afterlife. There were small models of boats, animals, people – lots of things that were important in daily life. Paintings in tombs often showed pictures of the person in the afterlife, too.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. .... have found lots of important artifacts in tombs for the Pharaohs.
   a. Vets b. Archaeologists c. Doctors
2. Ancient Egyptian .... is famous all around the world.
   a. art b. math c. Arabic

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did people believe about these artifacts ?

....

4. What are there in ancient temples ?

....

5. Why have the paintings survived for a long time in Egypt ?

....

6. What did paintings in tombs show ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma took out her pens and	a. to complete the upside down car invention.
2. Laila helped Nesma	b. stay on the track.
	c. paper, and started to draw.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Nesma didn't know what to make for the competition.
2. Nesma didn't think her ideas were very good.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. My name is .... on my books.
   a. write b. wrote c. written
2. Telegraph machine was .... in the 1830s.
   a. invent b. invents c. invented
3. If I pull the string, will the bell .... a sound ?
   a. making b. make c. made
4. You must .... hard for the exam.
   a. study b. studies c. studying

6 Read, order and write.

1. wear - has - My brother - a cast - to.

....

2. art - Ancient - is - Egyptian - famous.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Types of motion

Guiding elements :

- force
- pull
- push

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 11

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص

1. fl _ t _ 2. chan _ e 3. p _ _ se 4. sh _ _ t

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

update - car - program - news - presenters

I'm Gameela. My mom likes listening to the (1) .... on the radio when she is in her car or at home. The radio (2) .... explain everything very clearly. Sometimes, people can phone in and ask questions or say what they think in a radio (3) .... It's interesting, but I like listening to music in the (4) .... !

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A hospital is a place where people go for treatment. Sometimes people have a disease or infection that makes them ill. Sometimes they have an injury because of an accident. At the hospital, you will see a doctor or a nurse. They might ask questions to find out what is wrong with you. They need to know what hurts or how you feel. They might decide to give medicine - you drink or swallow this to help you get better.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Sometimes people have a disease that makes them ....
   a. ill b. angry c. excited
2. Doctors might ask .... to find out what is wrong.
   a. answers b. projects c. questions

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you go for treatment ?

....

4. Who will you see at the hospital ?

....

5. Why might doctors and nurses ask questions ?

....

6. What can help you get better ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma thought that magnets could •	☐ a. her ideas right.
2. Nesma couldn't get •	☐ b. make a toy.
	☐ c. make the car stay on the track.

B. Read and write [YES] or [NO].

1. At the competition, there is a model of a house that uses wind to keep warm. [......................]
2. The two girls saw the judges standing next to them. [......................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. You .... run in the school library.
   a. must b. mustn't c. is
2. I .... be short, but now I'm tall.
   a. didn't use to b. used to c. uses
3. You .... to Alexandria if you travel north.
   a. will get b. gets c. getting
4. The telegraph machine .... invented in 1830s.
   a. is b. was c. are

6 Read, order and write.

1. buy - My parents - every - a newspaper - day.

....

2. A computer - of - is - metal - made.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about [20] words [3-4] sentences using guiding elements:

Ways of communication

Guiding elements :

- video call
- letter
- send

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 12

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. artic _ _ 2. cam _ _ 3. bl _ _ 4. J _ n _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

metal - emails - made - offices - Code

Computers are very important. Computers are used in many (1)........................ stores, and businesses. A computer is made of (2)........................ , plastic, and glass. It isn't (3)........................ of wood. Billions of (4)........................ are sent every day using computers.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The Edwin Smith Papyrus is about surgery. Doctors in Ancient Egypt could do operations to help people get better after injuries. They could fix broken bones and injuries to the skin.

The Ebers Papyrus gives treatments for lots of different diseases. It talks about how the heart is the center of the blood supply in the body, and it gives advice about problems with skin, teeth, eyes and other organs.

Some things that Ancient Egyptians believed were very different, but we use some of their ideas in modern medicine. For example, they used herbs to treat some diseases, and we know today that these can help - mint is good for the digestive system, and aloe can help with burns. They also used honey to treat infections and skin problems.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. .... can help with burns.
   a. Aloe b. Tea c. Mint
2. .... is good for the digestive system.
   a. Honey b. Mint c. Aloe

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the Edwin Smith Papyrus about ?

....

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians use honey for ?

....

5. What could doctors in Ancient Egypt do ?

....

6. What does the Ebers Papyrus give ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. There were lots of children	a. her plans.
2. Nesma showed Laila	b. from schools around the city.
	c. isn't fast enough.

B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Nesma will write a diary about the competition.
2. The sun was shining through the window.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The toy train will move if you .... this string.
   a. will pull b. pull c. pulling
2. The ball was .... down the hill.
   a. rolling b. roll c. rolls
3. How .... clay is there ?
   a. many b. much c. often
4. You must .... your homework.
   a. do b. does c. did

6 Read, order and write.

1. all – flowers - Do - have - plants ?

....

2. to store – use – information - Computers - magnets.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Sources of news

Guiding elements :

- newspapers
- radio news
- social media

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 13

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. music _ _ 2. banda _ es 3. str _ _ 4. trea _ _ _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

listening - news stories - reads - lots - watch

I can read (1) .... and other articles in newspaper. You can (2) .... the news on television. My mom likes (3) .... to the news on the radio. My sister (4) .... the news on her phone.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The telegraph machine made it easy to communicate with people far away. Before the telegraph machine, many letters were sent. These could take a long time to arrive. Messages sent by a telegraph machine were called telegrams.

In telegrams, important information was written and read quickly. They were written in Morse Code. This code was invented by Samuel Morse. The code was understood by the person who worked in the telegraph office. They wrote the messages on paper. Then the paper messages were delivered to the correct person.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The telegraph machine made it easy to .... with people far away.
   a. walk b. communicate c. sleep
2. Before the telegraph machine, many .... were sent.
   a. letters b. emails c. numbers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What were messages sent by a telegraph machine called ?

....

4. Who invented Morse Code ?

....

5. What could take a long time to arrive ?

....

6. Who could understand the code ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma looked at books	( ) a. an inventor.
2. Nesma wants to be	( ) b. an engineer.
	( ) c. for ideas.

B. Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Nesma read grandma's note. (......................)
2. Nesma found a drawing of a small toy car on the internet. (......................)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. You must .... to the doctors and nurses.
   a. listened b. listen c. listens
2. How .... necklaces are there ?
   a. many b. often c. much
3. There isn't .... water.
   a. some b. any c. an
4. The children .... pushing their bikes up the hill.
   a. were b. was c. is

6 Read, order and write.

1. has – injury - He - an.

....

2. the – are – museum - We - at.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

Magnets

Guiding elements :

- attract
- repel
- poles

....
....
....
....

Sample Test 14

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. hospit _ _ 2. j _ _ el 3. adven _ _ _ _ 4. _ iraffe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

grow - sister - Identical - similar - seeds

Twins are two siblings who are born at the same time. [1].................... twins look exactly the same. Their bodies work and [2] .... in the same way. Non-identical twins can be [3] .... to each other, or they can be very different. They can be two brothers, two sisters, or a [4] .... and a brother.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Ali. Last week, I went to the museum with my family. There were lots of things to see at it. We visited a room with lots of jewelry. There were bracelets, necklaces and rings from Ancient Egypt. After the jewelry, we saw tools and artifacts. The museum was amazing. I like history. We went back home at 10.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. We visited a room with lots of ....
   a. jewelry b. books c. chairs
2. There were bracelets and .... from Ancient Egypt.
   a. dresses b. earrings c. necklaces

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Ali go last week ?

....

4. Were there lots of things to see at the museum ?

....

5. What did they see after the jewelry ?

....

6. What does Ali like ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma didn't know	a. to help her find things.
2. Nesma asked her mom	b. needs more power.
	c. what to make for the competition.

B. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. The prize will help the school.
2. Grandma found a way to make the car travel upside down.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. They were .... in the playground.
   a. run b. running c. runs
2. They .... walking in the park.
   a. was b. were c. is
3. The telegraph machine .... in the 1830s.
   a. was invented b. inventing c. invent
4. How .... paper is there ?
   a. many b. much c. often

6 Read, order and write.

1. Samy - a helmet - wearing - Was ?

....

2. Cars - safer - than - and quicker - walking - are.

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (20) words (3-4) sentences using guiding elements:

School rules

Guiding elements :

- listen
- teacher
- classmates

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 15

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق.

1 Listen and write the missing sounds. استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. tunn _ _ 2. mea _ _ _ _ 3. str _ _ 4. gl _ _

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ear - raise - follow - teachers - trash

I'm Omar. I like my school and my (1) .... There are some rules I must (2) .... at school. I must listen to my teacher. I must keep my class clean. If I want to talk at the classroom, I must (3) .... my hand. I mustn't make fun of my classmates. I must throw (4) .... in the bin.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Rabbits have lots of predators - bigger animals that hunt and eat them. The long ears help rabbits to hear well. Their ears can move, so the rabbit knows where a sound is coming from. The long ears also help the rabbit stay cool in hot weather, or keep warm in cold weather. So, long ears are very important for a rabbit's survival. Over time, rabbits with longer ears become safer and healthier. They could live for longer and have more litters. They will pass this trait to their offspring. Their offspring will be adapted to have long ears.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The long ears help the rabbit to stay cool in .... weather.
   a. cold b. hot c. snow
2. Rabbits with longer .... become safer and healthier.
   a. ears b. legs c. head

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What help rabbits to hear ?

....

4. What do we call the animals that hunt rabbits ?

....

5. Why can rabbits' ears move ?

....

6. Who will rabbits pass their trait to ?

....

4 The Reader

A. Read and match.

[A]	[B]
1. Nesma needs a small car to	( ) a. magnet to the car.
2. The two girls stuck the small	( ) b. cheap panel and a motor.
	( ) c. go on the track with a magnet in it.

B. Read and write [YES] or [NO].

1. Laila wants to help Nesma. [....................]
2. The two girls made a frame for the car to travel on. [....................]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I'm .... a picture at the moment.
   a. painted b. painting c. paint
2. Newspaper are .... in this store.
   a. sold b. sells c. sell
3. You mustn't .... your sports bag.
   a. forget b. forgot c. forgets
4. If you don't use a compass, you .... where to go.
   a. don't know b. won't know c. aren't know

6 Read, order and write.

1. family – love – my - I - seeing.

....

2. did – see - What - you ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about [20] words [3-4] sentences using guiding elements:

Your family

Guiding elements :

- adult
- nephew
- teenager

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz on Phonics

⊙ Listen and write the missing sounds :

	1.	2.	3.	4.
A	hospital	glue	sculpture	flute
B	blue	June	article	danger
C	sculpture	Morse Code	draw	camel
D	energy	write	new	audio message
E	cube	vehicle	measure	glue
F	jewel	draw	tunnel	plane
G	sea creature	village	short	sea
H	yawn	treasure	musical	flower
I	change	pause	village	short
J	adventure	cube	camel	blue

Sample Tests

⊙ Listen and write the missing sounds.

Sample Test 1
1. flute
2. measure
3. wear
4. audio message

Sample Test 2
1. vehicle
2. glue
3. treasure
4. Morse Code

Sample Test 3
1. sculpture
2. camel
3. draw
4. new

Sample Test 4
1. adventure
2. energy
3. June
4. yawn

Sample Test 5
1. danger
2. blue
3. pleasure
4. tunnel

Sample Test 6
1. bandages
2. jewel
3. sea creature
4. hospital

Sample Test 7
1. vehicle
2. draw
3. danger
4. tunnel

Sample Test 8
1. straw
2. short
3. true
4. treasure

Sample Test 9
1. giraffe
2. yawn
3. sea creature
4. cube

Sample Test 10
1. sculpture
2. village
3. draw
4. tunnel

Sample Test 11
1. flute
2. change
3. pause
4. short

Sample Test 12
1. article
2. camel
3. blue
4. June

Sample Test 13
1. musical
2. bandages
3. straw
4. treasure

Sample Test 14
1. hospital
2. jewel
3. adventure
4. giraffe

Sample Test 15
1. tunnel
2. measure
3. straw
4. glue